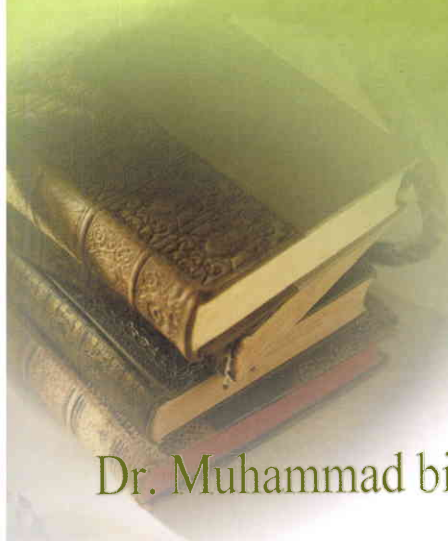


1/110



# Islam

Its Foundations  
And Concepts



By

Dr. Muhammad bin Abdullah As-Suhaym

The Cooperative Office For Call & Guidance AL-Badiah  
P.o.Box 24932 Riyadh 11456 Tel. 4330888 Fax 4301122

# **ISLAM**

## ***Its Foundation And Concepts***

*By*

**Dr. Muhammed bin Abdullah As-Suhaym**

*Translated by*

**Abdur-Raafi Adewale Imaam**

© **Muhammad Abdullah Al-Suhaym, 2005**

*King Fahad National Library Cataloging-in-Publication Data  
Al-Suhaym, Muhammad Abdullah.*

Islam: Its Foundation And Concepts./ Muhammad  
Abdullah Al-Suhaym.- Riyadh, 2005

224 p 14 x 21cm

ISBN: 9960-47-538-7

1- Islam- General Principles

210 dc

I-Title

1426/1239

Legal Deposit No. 1426/1239

ISBN: 9960-47-538-7

**1st, Edition**

1426A.H. - 2005A.C.

**All Rights Reserved**

تمت ترجمة الكتاب وصفه

من قبل:

رابطة العالمي الإسلامي

لجنة الدعوة والتعليم

بالمدينة المنورة

قسم الترجمة والنشر

# **Islaam:**

**Its Foundations and Concepts**

*By*

**Dr. Muhammad bin Abdullaah As-Suhaym**

*Translated by*

**Abdur-Raafi Adewale Imaam  
Translation and Publication Division,  
Islaamic Propagation And Education Committee,  
Al-Madeenah Al-Munawwarah  
[www.alharamainonline.org](http://www.alharamainonline.org)**

## **In the Name of Allaah, the Gracious, the Merciful**

### **Translator's note:**

All praise is due to Allaah<sup>1</sup> May peace and blessings be upon the Messenger, his household and companions.

This book is undoubtedly a commendable attempt at showing the beauties of Islaam to mankind, drawing a comparison between this great religion and other world religions in spiritual, moral, social and intellectual aspects and acquainting mankind with its principles and fundamentals in a logical, unambiguous, convincing, frank but gracious manner.

We would however like to call the attention of the reader to some points as regards the translation of some of the quotes and foreign names in this book. The author quoted some passages from the Bible and other books, which are not originally Arabic. Though we believe that the proper academic method in translating these passages is to refer to their original sources since most of them are in English, we could not however do so because of their unavailability to the translator. It is therefore hoped that, translation of the passages rendered here are as close as possible in meaning, to the original texts.

As for the names of some authors mentioned in the Book in Arabic letters, we exerted efforts to know the correct spelling of these names in their original languages. But due to the fact that the

---

<sup>1</sup> In transliterating Arabic words, the translator chose to use the double vowel 'aa', 'ee' and 'oo' to indicate *madd* [stretching] with *fathah*, *kasr*, and *damm* respectively as it is in '*Allaah*', '*Islaam*', '*Tawheed*', '*Soorah*', etc., because; using this method makes it easier for non-Arabic speaking readers to pronounce the words as closely as possible to the way the Arabic speakers do. This way has become standard way of transliteration by many famous Muslim writers and translators like Dr Bilal Philips and others.

author quoted excerpts from their books from secondary sources, which are in Arabic, we could not have access to the original books; hence the names were transliterated from Arabic.

Equally, the names of foreign references mentioned in this book in English may not be the exact names given by their various authors. Most of these are translated from Arabic.

In translating the meanings of the verses of the Glorious Qur'aan, I completely relied on the translation done by Al-Hilali and M. M. Khan and printed by King Fahd Complex for the Printing of the Holy Qur'an. I quoted the translation as it is without any addition or omission.

As for the hadeeths, I largely relied on M. M. Khan's translation if the *hadeeth* is reported by Al-Bukhaaree and Muslim or Al-Bukhaaree alone. If the hadeeth is reported by Muslim, I quoted from Siddiqi's translation. Otherwise, the *hadeeths* are translated by my humble self. In the footnote however, I deem it enough to mention only the collector of the *hadeeth* in the footnote. I add the initials 'AA' at the end of the footnotes added by me to distinguish between them and those of the author.

May Allaah make this book beneficial for all and reward its author abundantly in this world and the Hereafter.

### **Abdur-Raafi Adewale Imaam**

Islaamic Propagation And Education  
Committee,  
Al-Madeenah Al-Munawwarah  
[www.alharamainonline.org](http://www.alharamainonline.org)

**Author's preface**

All praise is due to Allaah. We praise Him and seek for His assistance and forgiveness. We seek refuge with Him from evils of our souls and our misdeeds. No one can mislead whosoever Allaah guides and none can guide whosoever Allaah causes to go astray.

I testify that there is no deity worthy of worship except Allaah alone. He has no partner. I also testify that Muhammad blessings and peace be upon him, is His slave and Messenger.

Allaah sent Messengers to mankind in order that people may not have any plea against Him after He has sent these Messengers. He also revealed Books as guidance, mercy, light and healing.

In the past, Messengers were especially sent to their people and entrusted with the preservation of their book. That was why their writings became forgotten and their laws became altered, because they were sent to a specific nation on a limited period.

Thereafter, Allaah chose His Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, and made him the last of all prophets and Messengers. He says,

﴿ مَا كَانَ مُحَمَّدٌ أَبَا أَحَدٍ مِّن رِّجَالِكُمْ وَلَكِن رَّسُولَ اللَّهِ وَخَاتَمَ  
النَّبِيِّينَ ﴾

*"Muhammad is not the father of anyone among you, but he is the Messenger of Allaah and the last (end) of the Prophets."*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ahzaab 33:40

Allaah honoured him with the best Revealed Book which is the glorious Qur'aan; He took it upon Himself to preserve it and did not assign the obligation of its preservation to any of His creatures. He says,

﴿ إِنَّا نَحْنُ نَزَّلْنَا الذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُونَ ﴾

"Verily, We it is Who have sent down the Dhikr (i.e., Qur'aan) and surely, We will guard it (from corruption)."<sup>1</sup>

He also makes the Law of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, the lasting one till the Day of Resurrection. He explained that the perpetuity of his Law necessitates the belief in it, calling unto it and being patient with it. Hence the path of the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, and his followers is that of calling to the way of Allaah with sure knowledge. While making this way clear, Allaah says,

﴿ قُلْ هَدِيَهُ سَبِيلِي أَدْعُوا إِلَى اللَّهِ عَالِيًا بَصِيرَةً أَنَا وَمَنْ اتَّبَعَنِي

﴿ وَسُبِّحَانَ اللَّهِ وَمَا أَنَا مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad): This is my way; I invite unto Allaah with sure knowledge, I and whosoever follows me. And Glorified and Exalted be Allaah. And I am not of the polytheists."<sup>2</sup>

Allaah commanded the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, to bear whatever harm he suffered in the cause of Allaah with patience and says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hijr 15:9

<sup>2</sup> Yoosuf 12:108



﴿ فَاصْبِرْ كَمَا صَبَرَ أُولُو الْعَزْمِ مِنَ الرُّسُلِ ﴾

*"Therefore be patient (O Muhammad) as did the Messengers of strong will."<sup>1</sup>*

He also enjoins patience on Muslims,

﴿ يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا اصْبِرُوا وَصَابِرُوا وَرَابِطُوا وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ

تُفْلِحُونَ ﴾

*"O you who believe! Endure and be more patient and guard (your territory by stationing army units permanently at the places from where the enemy can attack you) and fear Allaah, so that you may be successful."<sup>2</sup>*

In accordance with this gracious Divine Way, I write this book to invite people to the religion of Allaah, deriving guidance in doing so, from the Book of Allaah and the Sunnah of His Messenger. I briefly explained herein the story of the creation of the Universe, the creation of man and how he was favoured by sending Messengers to him and acquainting him with the situations of past religions. Afterwards, I made an introduction to Islaam as per its meaning and pillars. In this book, I have provided evidences for those who are looking for guidance, explained the way for those who are looking for salvation, showed the path to those who desire to follow the track of the Prophets, Messengers and righteous people. As for those who turn away from their path, such only befool themselves and take to the erroneous path.

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ahqaaf 46:35

<sup>2</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:200

It is a matter of fact that adherents of each religion call others to it and they believe that truth only abides in their religion. It is also a fact that adherents of each belief call others to follow their leader and extol him. As for the Muslim, he does not call people to follow his own ideology. His religion is the religion of Allaah with which He is pleased. Allaah says,

﴿ إِنَّ الدِّينَ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ الْإِسْلَامُ ﴾

*"Truly, the religion with Allaah is Islaam"*<sup>1</sup>

He also does not call people to glorify a human being, for all human beings are equal in the Religion of Allaah; nothing distinguishes one from another except piety. A Muslim rather calls people to follow the path of their Lord, to believe in His Messengers and follow His Law which He revealed to the last of His Messengers Muhammad blessings and peace be upon him, and which He commanded him to convey to all mankind.

It's on this account that I wrote this book in order to call people to the Religion of Allaah which He is pleased with and with which He sent His Last Messenger in order to guide those who are looking for guidance and happiness. By Allaah! No human being can have real happiness except through this religion and none can have rest of mind except by believing that Allaah is the only Lord (worthy of worship), that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is His Messenger and that Islaam is the only acceptable religion of Allaah.

Thousands of those who embraced Islaam have testified that they did not know real life until after they embraced Islaam and that they did never tasted happiness except under the shade of Islaam. Since it is a fact that every human being looks for happiness, peace of mind and truth, I prepare this work to help them achieve

---

<sup>1</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:19

that. I pray that Allaah makes this work purely for His sake and let it be well-accepted and make it one of those righteous deeds that will benefit its doer in this world and the next.

I give permission to translate and publish this book in any language to whoever may want to do so with a condition that the person act honestly in translating it and to do me a favour by sending a copy to me to avoid unnecessary repetition of efforts.

I equally request from whoever has any observation or correction either on the Arabic text of this Book or any of its translated versions to kindly send it to me through the below-mentioned address.

All praise is due to Allaah firstly and lastly, outwardly and inwardly. All praise is due to Him publicly and secretly. All praise is due to Him in the beginning and the end. All praise is due to him as much as can fill the heavens and the earth and whatever else that Our Lord may wish. May Allaah bestow peace and much blessing on our Prophet Muhammad, his companions and all those who follow his path till the day of reckoning.

The author,

**Dr. Muhammad bin Abdullaah bin Saalih As-Suhaym**

Riyadh,

Shawwaal 13, 1420

P. O. Box 1032 Riyadh 1342, P. O. Box 6249 Riyadh 11442

## **Where is the Way?**

When man grows and starts understanding things, many questions come to his mind like: Where am I from? Why did I come (to existence)? What will be my end? Who created me and created the universe around me? Who owns and controls this universe? And other questions like these.

However, he is unable to provide himself with answers to these questions. Even modern science is not capable of providing answers to them because these issues fall within religious domains. That is why there are numerous narrations and different superstitions and tales about them that only add to man's confusion and distress. It is impossible for man to get a satisfying answer to these questions unless he is guided by Allaah to the true religion that is capable of providing final decision on these and similar issues; for, these issues are among the divine secrets that only the true religion can give correct and accurate answers to and that is the only religion that Allaah revealed to His Prophets and Messengers. It is then incumbent upon man to learn the true religion and have belief in it in order to have his confusion and doubts removed and in order to be guided to the Straight Path.

In the following pages, I invite you to follow the Straight Path of Allaah and I present to you some evidences and proofs that you may carefully and patiently reflect on.

## Existence of Allaah, His Lordship (over all creation), His Oneness and His being the only God worthy of worship

OMany people do worship man-made deities like trees, stones and even human beings; that is why the Jews and idolaters asked the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, about the characteristics of his Lord. In reply to this question Allaah revealed,

﴿ قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ ﴿١﴾ اللَّهُ الصَّمَدُ ﴿٢﴾ لَمْ يَلِدْ وَلَمْ يُولَدْ ﴿٣﴾ وَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا أَحَدٌ ﴿٤﴾ ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad): He is Allaah, (the) One, Allaah, the Self-Sufficient Master (Whom all creatures need, He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not nor is He begotten. And there is none co-equal or comparable unto Him."<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ إِنَّ رَبَّكُمُ اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ فِي سِتَّةِ أَيَّامٍ ثُمَّ اسْتَوَىٰ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ يُغْثِي اللَّيْلَ النَّهَارَ يَطْلُبُهُ حَثِيثًا وَالشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ وَالنُّجُومَ مُسَخَّرَاتٍ بِأَمْرِهِ ۗ أَلَا لَهُ الْخَلْقُ وَالْأَمْرُ ۗ تَبَارَكَ اللَّهُ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿٢١﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ikhlaas 112: 1-4.

"Indeed your Lord is Allaah Who created the heavens and the earth in Six Days and then He Istawa (rose over) the Throne (really in a manner that suits His Majesty). He brings night as a cover over the day, seeking it rapidly, and (He created) the sun, the moon, the stars subjected to His Command. Blessed be Allaah, the Lord of all the world!"<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ اللَّهُ الَّذِي رَفَعَ السَّمَوَاتِ بِغَيْرِ عَمَدٍ تَرَوْنَهَا ثُمَّ أَسْتَوَىٰ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ  
وَسَخَّرَ الشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ كُلٌّ يَجْرِي لِأَجَلٍ مُّسَمًّى يُدَبِّرُ الْأَمْرَ يُفَصِّلُ  
الْآيَاتِ لَعَلَّكُمْ بِلِقَاءِ رَبِّكُمْ تُوقِنُونَ ﴿٥٥﴾ وَهُوَ الَّذِي مَدَّ الْأَرْضَ وَجَعَلَ  
فِيهَا رَوَاسِيَ وَأَنْهَارًا وَمِنْ كُلِّ الثَّمَرَاتِ جَعَلَ فِيهَا زَوْجَيْنِ اثْنَيْنِ يُغْشَىٰ  
الَّيْلَ النَّهَارَ ﴿٥٦﴾

"Allaah is He, Who raised the heaven without pillars that you can see. Then He Istawa (rose above) the Throne (really in a manner that suits His Majesty). He has subjected the sun and the moon (to continue going round)! Each running (its course) for a term appointed. He regulates all affairs, explaining the Aayaat (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.) in detail, that you may believe with certainty in the meeting with your Lord. And it is He who spread out the earth, and placed therein firm mountains and rivers and of every kind of fruits He made in pairs. He brings the night as a cover over the day..." until He says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:54.

﴿ اللَّهُ يَعْلَمُ مَا نَحْمِلُ كُلُّ أُنْثَىٰ وَمَا تَغِيصُ الْأَرْحَامُ وَمَا تَزْدَادُ<sup>ع</sup>  
 وَكُلُّ شَيْءٍ عِنْدَهُ بِمِقْدَارٍ ﴿٨﴾ عَلِيمُ الْغَيْبِ وَالشَّهَادَةِ الْكَبِيرُ  
 الْمُتَعَالِ ﴿٩﴾

"Allaah knows what every female bears and how much the womb falls short (of their time or number) or exceed. Everything with Him is in due proportion. All-Knower of the unseen and the seen, the Most Great, the Most-High."<sup>1</sup>

Allaah also says,

﴿ قُلْ مَنْ رَبُّ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ قُلِ اللَّهُ<sup>ع</sup> قُلْ أَفَاتَّخَذْتُمْ مِنْ دُونِهِ  
 أَوْلِيَاءَ لَا يَمْلِكُونَ لِأَنْفُسِهِمْ نَفْعًا وَلَا ضَرًّا قُلْ هَلْ يَسْتَوِي الْأَعْمَى  
 وَالْبَصِيرُ أَمْ هَلْ تَسْتَوِي الظُّلُمَاتُ وَالنُّورُ<sup>ه</sup> أَمْ جَعَلُوا لِلَّهِ شُرَكَاءَ خَلَقُوا  
 كَخَلْقِهِ فَتَشَبَهَ الْخَلْقُ عَلَيْهِمْ<sup>ع</sup> قُلِ اللَّهُ خَلِقُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَهُوَ الْوَاحِدُ  
 الْقَهَّارُ ﴿٩﴾

"Say (O Muhammad): Who is the Lord of the heavens and the earth? Say: (It is) Allaah. Say: Have you then taken (for worship) protectors other than Him, such as have no power either for benefit or for harm to themselves? Say: Is the blind equal to the one who sees? Or darkness equal to light? Or do they assign Allaah partners who created the like of His creation, so that the creation

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Ra'd 13:2, 3, 8, 9.

(which they made and His creation) seemed alike to them? Say: Allaah is the Creator of all things. He is the One, the Irresistible.”<sup>1</sup>

While establishing for mankind His signs as evidences and proofs, He says,

﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ اللَّيْلُ وَالنَّهَارُ وَالشَّمْسُ وَالْقَمَرُ ۚ لَا تَسْجُدُوا لِلشَّمْسِ وَلَا لِلْقَمَرِ وَاسْجُدُوا لِلَّهِ الَّذِي خَلَقَهُنَّ إِن كُنتُمْ إِيَّاهُ تَعْبُدُونَ ﴿٢٠﴾ فَإِنِ اسْتَكْبَرُوا فَالَّذِينَ عِنْدَ رَبِّكَ يُسَبِّحُونَ لَهُ بِاللَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ وَهُمْ لَا يَسْئَمُونَ ﴿٢١﴾ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ أَنْ تَرَى الْأَرْضَ خَاشِعَةً فَإِذَا أَنْزَلْنَا عَلَيْهَا الْمَاءَ اهْتَزَّتْ وَرَبَتْ ﴿٢٢﴾ إِنَّ الَّذِي أَحْيَاهَا لَمُحْيِ الْمَوْتَىٰ ﴿٢٣﴾ إِنَّهُ عَلَىٰ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ﴿٢٤﴾ ﴾

“And from among His signs are the night and the day, and the sun and the moon. Prostrate not to the sun or the moon, but prostrate to Allaah who created them, if you really worship Him. But if they are too proud (to do so), then those who are with your Lord (angels) glorify Him night and day, and never are they tired. And among His signs (in this), that you see the earth barren, but when We send down water (rain) to it, it is stirred to life and growth (of vegetations). Verily, He Who gives it life, sure is Able to give life to the dead (on the Day of Resurrection). Indeed He is Able to do all things.”<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Ra'd 13:16

<sup>2</sup> Fussilat 41:37-39



﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ خَلْقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَاخْتِلَافُ أَلْسِنَتِكُمْ وَالْوَالِدَاتُ إِذَا حَمَلْنَ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ لِّلْعَالَمِينَ ﴿٢٢﴾ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ مَنَامُكُمْ بِاللَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ ﴾

*"And among His signs is the creation of the heavens and the earth, and the differences of your languages and colours. Verily, in that are indeed signs for men of sound knowledge. And among His signs is your sleep by night and by day..."<sup>1</sup>*

While describing Himself with Attributes of beauty and perfection He says,

﴿ اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ لَا تَأْخُذُهُ سِنَّةٌ وَلَا نَوْمٌ لَهُ مَا فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَمَا فِي الْأَرْضِ مَنْ ذَا الَّذِي يَشْفَعُ عِنْدَهُ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِ ۗ يَعْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ ۗ وَلَا يُحِيطُونَ بِشَيْءٍ مِّنْ عِلْمِهِ إِلَّا بِمَا شَاءَ ۗ ﴾

*"Allaah! None has the right to be worshipped but He. The Ever-Living, the One Who sustains and protects all that exists. Neither slumber nor sleep overtakes Him. To Him belongs whatsoever is in the heavens and whatsoever is in the earth. Who is he that can intercede with Him except with His permission? He knows what happens to them (His creatures) in this world and what will happen*

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Room 30:22-23

to them in the Hereafter. And they will never compass anything of His knowledge except that which He wills.”<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ عَافِرِ الذَّنْبِ وَقَابِلِ التَّوْبِ شَدِيدِ الْعِقَابِ ذِي الطَّوْلِ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ إِلَيْهِ الْمَصِيرُ ﴾

*“The Forgiver of sins, the Acceptor of repentance, the Stern in punishment, the Bestower (of favours). Lâ ilâha illa Huwa. None has the right to be worshipped but He. To Him is the final return.”*<sup>2</sup>

He – may His praise be exalted- also says,

﴿ هُوَ اللَّهُ الَّذِي لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْمَلِكُ الْقُدُّوسُ السَّلَامُ الْمُؤْمِنُ الْمُهَيْمِنُ الْعَزِيزُ الْجَبَّارُ الْمُتَكَبِّرُ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ عَمَّا يُشْرِكُونَ ﴾

*He is Allâh besides Whom Lâ ilâha illa Huwa (none has the right to be worshipped but He) the King, the Holy, the One Free from all defects, the Giver of security, the Watcher over His creatures, the All-Mighty, the Compeller, the Supreme. Glory be to Allâh! (High is He) above all that they associate as partners with Him.*<sup>3</sup>

This Wise and Omnipotent Lord who made Himself known to His slaves and established for them His signs and proofs and described Himself with attributes of perfection had prophetic ordainments, human wisdom and nature testify to His existence, to His Lordship and being the only one having the right to be

<sup>1</sup> Al-Baqarah 2:255

<sup>2</sup> Ghaafir 40:3

<sup>3</sup> Al-Hashr 59:23

worshipped. I will –God willing- show that to you in the following pages.

As for proofs of His existence and Lordship, they are:

### **One: Creation of this universe and its wonderful design**

O man! All this universe that surrounds you; the heavens, the stars, the galaxies and the earth that is spread in which there are neighbouring tracts out of which different plants grow bearing all fruits, and on which you find all creatures in pairs... this universe did not create itself and could never create itself. It must then have a creator. Who then is that creator who created it in this wonderful design and perfection and made it a sign for those who can see save Allaah the One, the Subduer Whom there is no Lord or deity worthy of worship beside Him. He says,

﴿ أَمْ خُلِقُوا مِنْ غَيْرِ شَيْءٍ أَمْ هُمْ الْخَالِقُونَ ﴿٥١﴾ أَمْ خَلَقُوا السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ  
بَلْ لَا يُوقِنُونَ ﴿٥٢﴾ ﴾

*"Were they created by nothing or were they themselves the creators? Or did they create the heavens and the earth? Nay, but they have no firm belief."<sup>1</sup>*

These two verses imply three questions:

- 1- Were they created from nothing?
- 2- Did they create themselves?
- 3- Did they create the heavens and the earth?

If their creation was not accidental and they had not created themselves or created the heavens and the earth; it should then be affirmed that there exists a creator who created them as well as the

<sup>1</sup> At-Toor 52:35-36

heavens and the earth. That Creator is Allaah, the One, the Subduer.

## Two: The nature

All creatures are naturally inclined to believe in the existence of the Creator; to affirm that He is greater and mightier than all things. This inclination is more well-rooted in the nature than elementary mathematics and does not need to be proved by any evidence except for him who has an abnormal nature; a nature that has been exposed to circumstances that turn it away from what it should admit.<sup>1</sup> Allaah says,

﴿ فَأَقِمَّ وَجْهَكَ لِلدِّينِ حَنِيفًا ۚ فِطْرَتَ اللَّهِ الَّتِي فَطَرَ النَّاسَ عَلَيْهَا ۚ لَا تَبْدِيلَ لِخَلْقِ اللَّهِ ۚ ذَٰلِكَ الدِّينُ الْقَيِّمُ وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٣٠﴾ ﴾

*So set you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) your face towards the religion (of pure Islâmic Monotheism) Hanîf (worship none but Allâh Alone). Allâh's Fitrah (i.e. Allâh's Islâmic Monotheism) with which He has created mankind. No change let there be in Khalq-illâh (i.e. the religion of Allâh - Islâmic Monotheism): that is the straight religion, but most of men know not.*<sup>2</sup>

The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "Every child is born with natural inclination to Islaamic Monotheism and it is his parents who make him a Jew, a Christian or a Magian<sup>3</sup> just as the animal gives birth to its young whole, wherein you find no mutilation." Then Aboo Hurayrah (who is the narrator of this hadeeth) said: "Recite if you like (Allaah's words):

<sup>1</sup> Majmoo' Fatawa Ibn Taymiyah 1:47-49, 73

<sup>2</sup> Ar-Room 30:30

<sup>3</sup> Magians are those who worship fire and other natural phenomena. AA

﴿ فَأَقْرَ وَجْهَكَ لِلدِّينِ حَنِيفًا ۚ فِطْرَتَ اللَّهِ الَّتِي فَطَرَ النَّاسَ عَلَيْهَا ۚ لَا تَبْدِيلَ لِخَلْقِ اللَّهِ ۚ ذَٰلِكَ الدِّينُ الْقَيِّمُ وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٢٠٠﴾

*"Allâh's Fitrah (i.e. Allâh's Islâmic Monotheism) with which He has created mankind. No change let there be in Khalq-illâh (i.e. the religion of Allâh - Islâmic Monotheism): that is the straight religion, but most of men know not."*<sup>1</sup>

He also said, "Verily, my Lord commanded me to teach you what you do not know of that which He has taught me today: 'All money that I endowed a slave with, is lawful (for him). I created my slaves naturally inclined to Islaamic Monotheism and it were the devils who came to them, led them away from their religion, made forbidden for them what I made lawful and enjoined on them to associate partners with Me in worship of which I did not send any proof.' "<sup>2</sup>

### **Three: Consensus of all people**

All past and modern nations are in consensus that this universe has a creator who is Allaah the Lord of all the worlds, that He is the Creator of the heavens and the earth and that He has no partner among His creatures as He does not have a partner in His Sovereignty.

No belief has ever been reported from any of the past nations that their false deities took part with Allaah in the creation of the heavens and the earth. Rather, they all believed that it was Allaah Who created them and their gods, that there was no creator or sustainer besides Him and that He alone owns the power to bring

<sup>1</sup> Al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

<sup>2</sup> Ahmad and Muslim.

benefit or inflict harm.<sup>1</sup> Allaah informs us in the following verses of the idolaters' affirmation of His Lordship and guardianship,

﴿ وَلَئِن سَأَلْتَهُمْ مَنْ خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ وَسَخَّرَ الشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ لَيَقُولُنَّ اللَّهُ فَأَنَّى يُؤْفَكُونَ ﴿٢٠﴾ اللَّهُ يَبْسُطُ الرِّزْقَ لِمَنْ يَشَاءُ مِنْ عِبَادِهِ وَيَقْدِرُ لَهُ إِنْ أَرَادَ اللَّهُ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عِلْمًا ﴿٢١﴾ وَلَئِن سَأَلْتَهُمْ مَنْ نَزَّلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَأَحْيَا بِهِ الْأَرْضَ مِنْ بَعْدِ مَوْتِهَا لَيَقُولُنَّ اللَّهُ قُلِ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ بَلْ أَكْثَرُهُمْ لَا يَعْقِلُونَ ﴿٢٢﴾ ﴾

"If you were to ask them: "Who has created the heavens and the earth and subjected the sun and the moon?" They will surely reply: "Allâh." How then are they deviating (as polytheists and disbelievers)? Allâh enlarges the provision for whom He wills of His slaves, and straitens it for whom (He wills). Verily, Allâh is the All-Knower of everything. If you were to ask them: "Who sends down water (rain) from the sky, and gives life therewith to the earth after its death?" They will surely reply: "Allâh." Say: "All the praises and thanks be to Allâh!" Nay! Most of them have no sense."<sup>2</sup>

﴿ وَلَئِن سَأَلْتَهُمْ مَنْ خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ لَيَقُولُنَّ خَلَقَهُنَّ الْعَزِيزُ الْعَلِيمُ ﴿٢٣﴾ ﴾

"And indeed if you ask them, 'Who has created the heavens and the earth?' They will surely say: 'The All-Mighty, the All-Knower created them.'<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Majmoo' Fatawa 14:380-383

<sup>2</sup> Al-'Ankaboot 29:61-63

<sup>3</sup> Az-Zukhruf 9

**Four: The reason**

Human reason inevitably confirms that this universe has a great Creator; for the sound reason agrees that this universe is a created thing that did not bring itself to being, hence, it must have an originator.

Also, man knows that he falls into crises and afflictions and when he is unable to prevent them or remove them, he faces the heavens with his heart and seeks for His Lord's aid to remove his distress even though he may denounce his Lord and worship his idols in his normal days. This is an undisputable fact. Even the animal raises his head up and looks at the sky whenever it is visited by an affliction. The Almighty Allah informs us that man, whenever he is afflicted with harm, hastens to his Lord and asks Him to remove the harm. Allaah says,

﴿ وَإِذَا مَسَّ الْإِنْسَانَ ضُرٌّ دَعَا رَبَّهُ مُنِيبًا إِلَيْهِ ثُمَّ إِذَا حَوَّلَهُ نِعْمَةً مِّنْهُ نَسِيَ مَا كَانَ يَدْعُوًا إِلَيْهِ مِنْ قَبْلُ وَجَعَلَ لِلَّهِ أَنْدَادًا لِّيُضِلَّ عَنْ سَبِيلِهِ ۗ قُلْ تَمَتَّعْ بِكُفْرِكَ قَلِيلًا ۗ إِنَّكَ مِنْ أَصْحَابِ النَّارِ ﴿٥١﴾ ﴾

*"And when some hurt touches man, he cries to his Lord (Allâh Alone), turning to Him in repentance. But when He bestows a favor upon him from Himself, he forgets that for which he cried for before, and he sets up rivals to Allâh."<sup>1</sup>*

He also says about the idolaters,

<sup>1</sup> Az-Zumar 39:8

﴿ هُوَ الَّذِي يُسَيِّرُكُمْ فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ ۗ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا كُنْتُمْ فِي الْفُلِكِ وَجَرَبَ بِكُمْ بَرِيحٌ طَيِّبَةٌ وَفَرِحْتُمْ بِهَا جَاءَتْهَا رِيحٌ عَاصِفٌ وَجَاءَهُمُ الْمَوْجُ مِنْ كُلِّ مَكَانٍ وَظَنُّوا أَنَّهُمْ أُحِيطَ بِهِمْ ۗ دَعَوُا اللَّهَ مُخْلِصِينَ لَهُ الدِّينَ لَئِنِ أَخْرَجْنَا مِنْ هَذِهِ لَتَكُونَنَّ مِنَ الشَّاكِرِينَ ﴿١٠﴾ فَلَمَّا أَخَذْنَاهُمْ إِذَا هُمْ يَتَّبِعُونَ فِي الْأَرْضِ بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ يَتَأَيُّبُ النَّاسُ إِنَّمَا بَغَيْتُمْ عَلَيَّ أَنْفُسَكُمْ ۗ مَتَّعَ الْحَيَاةَ الدُّنْيَا ۗ ثُمَّ إِلَيْنَا مَرْجِعُكُمْ فَنُنَبِّئُكُمْ بِمَا كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١١﴾﴾

"He it is Who enables you to travel through land and sea, till when you are in the ships, and they sail with them with a favorable wind, and they are glad therein, then comes a stormy wind and the waves come to them from all sides, and they think that they are encircled therein. Then they invoke Allâh, making their Faith pure for Him Alone, (saying): "If You (Allâh) deliver us from this, we shall truly be of the grateful." But when He delivered them, behold! They rebel (disobey Allâh) in the earth wrongfully. O mankind! Your rebellion (disobedience to Allâh) is only against your own selves, - a brief enjoyment of this worldly life, then (in the end) unto Us is your return, and We shall inform you that which you used to do."<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَإِذَا غَشَّتْهُمْ مَوْجٌ كَالظَّلِيلِ دَعَوُا اللَّهَ مُخْلِصِينَ لَهُ الدِّينَ فَلَمَّا نَجَّيْنَاهُمْ إِلَى الْبَرِّ فَمِنْهُمْ مُقْتَصِدٌ ۗ وَمَا يَجْحَدُ بِآيَاتِنَا إِلَّا كُلُّ خَتَّارٍ كَفُورٍ ﴿١٢﴾﴾

"And when a wave covers them like shades (i.e. like clouds or the mountains of seawater), they invoke Allâh, making their

<sup>1</sup> Yoonus 10:22-23



*invocations for Him only. But when He brings them safe to land, there are among them those that stop in between (Belief and disbelief). But none denies Our Signs except every perfidious ingrate.*"<sup>1</sup>

This Lord who brought this universe to existence, created man in the best form, embedded in his nature servitude and submission to Him, subjected human reason to the belief in His Lordship and His exclusive worthiness of being worshipped. It is Allaah Whom all nations unanimously testify to His guardianship... as He should inevitably be One in His Lordship and worthiness to be worshipped. As He has no partner in creating His creatures, He should also have no partner in His worthiness of being worshipped. There are numerous evidences for this, some of which are:

1- There is only in this universe one God Who is the creator and the sustainers of all. None brings harm or benefit except Him. Had there been any other god besides Him, that god would have had his own work, creation and command and none of both would have allowed another to share the creation with him. Hence, one of them must have overpowered and subdued the other. In that case, the subdued could not have been a god and the Subduer should be the real God with whom none can share the right to be worshipped just as none shares with Him His guardianship and lordship. Allaah says,

﴿ مَا اتَّخَذَ اللَّهُ مِنْ وَلَدٍ وَمَا كَانَ مَعَهُ مِنْ إِلَهٍ إِذَا لَدَّهَبَ كُلُّ إِلَهٍ بِمَا خَلَقَ  
وَلَعَلَّا بَعْضُهُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ عَمَّا يُصِفُونَ ﴿٣١﴾ ﴾

*"No son (or offspring) did Allâh beget, nor is there any ilâh (god) along with Him; (if there had been many gods), then each god*

<sup>1</sup> Luqmaan 31:32

\*For more of these evidences, see Kitaabut-Tawheed by Muhammad Ibn Abdul Wahhaab.

would have taken away what he had created, and some would have tried to overcome others! Glorified is Allâh above all that they attribute to Him!"<sup>1</sup>

2- None deserves to be worshipped but Allaah Who created the heavens and the earths; for, man seeks to gain the favour of the Lord Who brings him benefit and prevents harm, evils and calamities from him and none but the One Who owns the heavens and the earth is capable of doing all these. Had there been any other lords as the idolaters do claim, human would have taken ways that lead to the worship of Allaah Who is the True Sovereign. This is because, all false deities that are worshipped besides the True Lord, they themselves, used to worship Allaah and seek nearness to Him alone.

Therefore, those who want to seek nearness to Allaah, Who has the power to give benefits and bestow harm, should worship the True Lord Whom all that is in the heavens and the earth –including the false deities –do worship. Let those who are searching for the truth read (the following verse):

﴿ قُلِ ادْعُوا الَّذِينَ زَعَمْتُمْ مِّنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ لَا يَمْلِكُونَ مِثْقَالَ ذَرَّةٍ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَلَا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَمَا هُمْ فِيهِنَّ مِن شَرِكٍ وَمَا لَهُ مِنْ ظَهِيرٍ ﴿٢٠﴾ وَلَا تَنْفَعُ الشَّفَعَةُ عِنْدَهُ إِلَّا لِمَنْ أذِنَ لَهُ ﴾

Say: (O Muhammad (peace be upon him) to those polytheists, pagans) "Call upon those whom you assert (to be associate gods) besides Allâh, they possess not even an atom's (or a small ant's) weight, either in the heavens or on the earth, nor have they any share in either, nor there is for Him any supporter from among

<sup>1</sup> Al-Mu'minoon 23:91

them. Intercession with Him profits not except for him whom He permits.”<sup>1</sup>

These verses and others keep the heart from inclining towards other things besides Allaah through four factors:

One: That those whom the polytheists worship possess not even the weight of an atom with Allaah, and he who possesses not a weight of an atom cannot benefit nor harm and therefore, is not worthy of being worshipped or being taken as Allaah's associate in worship. It is Allaah alone Who owns them and controls them.

Two: That they possess nothing in the heavens and the earth and they do not even have an atom weight of share in them.

Three: Allaah has no helper among His creatures. Rather, He is the One who helps them in what is of benefit for them and drives away from them what harms them. For, He completely has no need of them; it is they who are rather who are in absolute need of Him.

Four: That these so-called associates are not capable of interceding with Allaah on behalf of their followers and they will not even be given permission to do so. Allaah does not give permission to intercede except to His friends, and His friends also cannot intercede except on behalf of the one whom Allaah is pleased with his sayings, deeds and belief.<sup>2</sup>

**3-** Systematic arrangement and precise execution of the affairs of this universe is the strongest indication that its controller is one Lord, one (King), beside Whom there is no other creator. As it is impossible for this universe to have two creators, so it is impossible for it to have two Lords. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Saba' 34:22-23

<sup>2</sup> See Qurratu 'uyoonil-muwahhideen p.100

﴿ لَوْ كَانَ فِيهِمَا ءِآلهَةٌ إِلاَّ اللّٰهُ لَفَسَدَتَا ۗ فَسُبْحٰنَ اللّٰهِ رَبِّ الْعَرْشِ عَمَّا يَصِفُوْنَ ﴿۲۱﴾ ﴾

*"Had there been therein (in the heavens and the earth) âlihah (gods) besides Allâh, then verily both would have been ruined."<sup>1</sup>*

Had it been assumed that there was in the heaven and the earth another god besides Allaah, they would have been ruined. Because; had there been another god besides Allaah, both [Allaah and the other god] would need to be autocratic and have the right of free disposal. That would have then lead to contention and fighting and the ruin of the heaven and the earth would have occurred as a result. It is impossible for the body to have two controlling souls; if that happens the body will be destroyed – how then can it be imagined that this universe, which is greater, should have two lords?

**4- Consensus of the Prophets and Messengers:** All nations agree that the Prophets and Messengers are the wisest, most intelligent, best in morality, most sincere, most knowledgeable of what Allaah wants and the most rightly guided of all people, because, they received revelation from Allaah and conveyed it to people. And all Prophets and Messengers – right from Adam to the last Prophet who is Muhammad, peace be upon them all – have all called their peoples to the belief in Allaah and abstention from worshipping anything besides Him and that He is the only True Lord. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ مِنْ رَّسُولٍ إِلاَّ نُوحِيْ اِلَيْهِ اَنْهٗ لَا اِلٰهَ اِلاَّ اَنَا ۗ فَاعْبُدُوْنِ ﴿۲۲﴾ ﴾

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:22

And We did not send any Messenger before you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) but We revealed to him (saying): *Lâ ilâha illa Ana* (none has the right to be worshipped but I (Allâh)) so worship Me (Alone and none else)."<sup>1</sup>

He also says about Noah – Peace be upon him – that he told his people,

﴿ أَنْ لَا تَعْبُدُوا إِلَّا اللَّهَ ۗ إِنِّي أَخَافُ عَلَيْكُمْ عَذَابَ يَوْمِ الْيَوْمِ ﴿١٠٨﴾

"That you worship none but Allâh; surely, I fear for you the torment of a painful Day."<sup>2</sup>

Allaah – may He be glorified– says about the last of all Messengers, Muhammad,

﴿ قُلْ إِنَّمَا يُوحَىٰ إِلَيَّ أَنَّمَا إِلَهُكُمُ إِلَهُهُ وَاحِدٌ ۗ فَهَلْ أَنْتُمْ مُسْلِمُونَ ﴿١٠٨﴾

"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "It is revealed to me that your Ilâh (God) is only one Ilâh (God - Allâh). Will you then submit to His Will (become Muslims and stop worshipping others besides Allâh)?"<sup>3</sup>

This God is the One who wonderfully created the universe from naught; He created man in the best form and perfected his creation and impressed in his nature the affirmation of His Lordship and His exclusive right to be worshipped. He lets him have peace of mind through his submission to Him and following His Path and He ordained it on his soul not to be at rest until it surrenders to its Creator and be in continuous contact with Him. He also makes it impossible to contact with Him except through His Straight Path,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:25

<sup>2</sup> Hood 11:26

<sup>3</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:108

which the honourable Prophets conveyed. He gave man intelligence, which only becomes upright and functions properly when he believes in Allaah, Glory be to Him.

When one has an upright nature, a peaceful soul and a believing heart, one achieves happiness, security and peace in this world and the Hereafter. But when man refuses all that, he will live in the alleys of this world disorganised and divided among its gods, ignorant as to who can benefit him or prevent harm from him. It is in order that true faith may be established in the heart and the ugliness of disbelief may be exposed that Allaah makes a parable – for parables bring meanings closer to understanding. He makes a parable of a man whose affair is divided between numerous gods and a man who worships his Lord alone. He, may He be glorified, says,

﴿ ضَرَبَ اللَّهُ مَثَلًا رَجُلًا فِيهِ شُرَكَاءُ مُتَشَاكِسُونَ وَرَجُلًا سَلَمًا لِرَجُلٍ هَلْ يَسْتَوِيَانِ  
مَثَلًا الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ بَلْ أَكْثَرُهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴾

*"Allâh puts forth a similitude: a (slave) man belonging to many partners (like those who worship others along with Allâh) disputing with one another, and a (slave) man belonging entirely to one master (like those who worship Allâh Alone). Are those two equal in comparison? All the praises and thanks are to Allâh! But most of them know not."*<sup>1</sup>

Allaah likens the slave who is a polytheist to a slave who is owned by different associates and over whom they all contend with each other. He is divided among them and every one of them directs him and assigns responsibilities to him. He is confused among them and is always unstable. He is unable to satisfy their different and contradicting desires that tear his energy and directions apart.

---

<sup>1</sup> Az-Zumar 39:29

He also likens the slave who is a monotheist to a slave who is owned by a single master. He knows what his master wants and the assignments he gives him. He is thereby comfortable and settled on a clear path. Both of these two slaves cannot be equal. For, one submits to a single master and enjoys the pleasure of uprightness, knowledge and certainty and the other one submits to different and disputing masters and is thereby punished and distressed. He is not stable on a condition and cannot please even one of them let alone all of them.

After proofs on the existence of Allaah, His Lordship and His exclusive right to be worshipped have become clear, we should then acquaint ourselves with His creation of the universe and man and know His wisdom behind that.

## Creation of the Universe

This universe, with its heavens, earth, stars, galaxies, seas, trees and all living things are created from non-existence by Allaah – the Glorified and Exalted. He says,

﴿ قُلْ أَيُّكُمْ لَتَكْفُرُونَ بِالَّذِي خَلَقَ الْأَرْضَ فِي يَوْمَيْنِ وَتَجْعَلُونَ لَهُ أُنْدَادًا ذَلِكَ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿١٠﴾ وَجَعَلَ فِيهَا رَواسِيَ مِنْ فَوْقِهَا وَبَرَكَ فِيهَا وَقَدَّرَ فِيهَا أَقْوَامًا فِي أَرْبَعَةِ أَيَّامٍ سَوَاءً لِّلسَّابِلِينَ ﴿١١﴾ ثُمَّ اسْتَوَىٰ إِلَى السَّمَاءِ وَهِيَ دُخَانٌ فَقَالَ لَهَا وَلِلْأَرْضِ ائْتِيَا طَوْعًا أَوْ كَرْهًا قَالَتَا أَتَيْنَا طَائِعِينَ ﴿١٢﴾ فَقَضَاهُنَّ سَبْعَ سَمَوَاتٍ فِي يَوْمَيْنِ وَأَوْحَىٰ فِي كُلِّ سَمَاءٍ أَمْرَهَا وَزَيَّنَّا السَّمَاءَ الدُّنْيَا بِمَصَابِيحَ وَحِفْظًا ذَلِكَ تَقْدِيرُ الْعَزِيزِ الْعَلِيمِ ﴿١٣﴾ ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "Do you verily disbelieve in Him Who created the earth in two Days? And you set up rivals (in worship) with Him? That is the Lord of the 'Alamîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists). He placed therein (i.e. the earth) firm mountains from above it, and He blessed it, and measured therein its sustenance (for its dwellers) in four Days equal (i.e. all these four days were equal in the length of time) for all those who ask (about its creation). Then He (rose over) Istawâ towards the heaven when it was smoke, and said to it and to the earth: "Come both of you willingly or unwillingly." They both said: "We come, willingly." Then He completed and finished from their creation (as) seven heavens in two Days and He made in each heaven its affair. And We adorned the nearest (lowest) heaven with lamps (stars) to be an adornment as well as to guard (from the devils by using



them as missiles against the devils). Such is the Decree of Him the All-Mighty, the All-Knower.”<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿أَوَلَمْ يَرِ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا أَنَّ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ كَانَتَا رَتْقًا فَفَتَقْنَاهُمَا وَجَعَلْنَا مِنَ الْمَاءِ كُلَّ شَيْءٍ حَيٍّ أَفَلَا يُؤْمِنُونَ ﴿٢٤﴾ وَجَعَلْنَا فِي الْأَرْضِ رَوَاسِيَ أَنْ تَمِيدَ بِهِمْ وَجَعَلْنَا فِيهَا فِجَاجًا سُبُلًا لَعَلَّهُمْ يَهْتَدُونَ ﴿٢٥﴾ وَجَعَلْنَا السَّمَاءَ سَقْفًا مَحْفُوظًا وَهُمْ عَنْ آيَاتِهَا مُعْرِضُونَ ﴿٢٦﴾﴾

*Have not those who disbelieve known that the heavens and the earth were joined together as one united piece, then We parted them? And We have made from water every living thing. Will they not then believe? And We have placed on the earth firm mountains, lest it should shake with them, and We placed therein broad highways for them to pass through, that they may be guided. And We have made the heaven a roof, safe and well guarded. Yet they turn away from its signs (i.e. sun, moon, winds, clouds, etc.).*<sup>2</sup>

Allaah created the universe for many great purposes. There are in every part of it great wisdom and dazzling signs. If you ponder over a single sign thereof, you will see wonders. Behold the wonders of the creation of Allaah in the plants in which almost every leaf, stem and fruit is full of benefit that human intellect cannot fully comprehend and understand its details. Behold the water courses of those tender and weak stems, which eyes can hardly see except by careful observation, how they are able to draw water from the bottom to the top and the water then moves in those courses according to their acceptability and capacities. It then breaks into particles that cannot be perceived by human eyes. Then behold

<sup>1</sup> Fussilat 41:9-12

<sup>2</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:30-32

the fruit of a tree and how it moves from a stage to another like the invincible movement of the conditions of a foetus. You see a tree growing from a mere naked wood with no covering on it, then its Lord and Creator covers it with leaves in the most beautiful manner. He then brings out its fruit tender and weak after He has brought out its leaf in order to preserve it and make it like clothing for that weak fruit so as to protect it against heat, cold and other harmful phenomena. He then provides sustenance for these fruits through their stems and watercourses so that that can nourish them, as an infant is nourished by the milk of its mother. He then nurtures the fruits and develops them until they become completely ripe. He thereby brought out that delicious fruit out of that lifeless wooden-like particle.

When you look at the earth and how it was created, you will see that it is one of the greatest signs of its Creator. Allaah makes it a resting place and as a bed, and subjected it to His slaves. He makes their sustenance, provision and sources of livelihood there and created therein for them ways and paths so that they can move about to meet their needs. He fixed it firmly with mountains and makes them as pillars in order to protect it against shaking. He flattens it, extends it and spreads it, makes it a receptacle for the living that brings them together on its surface and makes it a receptacle for the dead that bring them together in its interior after their death. Its surface is a place of dwelling for the living and its interior is the place of abode for the dead.

Then look at its revolving orbit, with its sun, moon, stars and zodiacs and behold how it continuously revolves around this world till the end of time in this order and proper succession and see the differences in the night, day, seasons, heat and cold which are results of these wonderful movements; and the benefits they give to all kinds of animals and plants and all that exists on the earth.

Then reflect over the creation of the heaven and take another look at it; you will see that it is one of the greatest signs of Allaah in altitude, expansiveness and stability. There is no pillar underneath

it and there is no suspender over it but held by the infinite power of Allaah which holds the heaven and the earth lest they fall asunder.

When you also look at this universe, the composition of its parts and its best arrangement – that show the perfect omnipotence of their Creator and His perfect knowledge, wisdom and grace – you will find that it is like a constructed edifice in which all its tools and requirements are provided. The heaven was erected with its roof raised above it; the earth made like a place of rest and a carpet for its dwellers; the sun and moon which are like lamps illuminate the earth; and the stars which are its lanterns and adornment give directions to the traveller in the paths of the universe. The jewels and minerals that are hidden in the earth like prepared treasures are all made for the purpose that best suits them. All kinds of plants and animals are also prepared for what they are good for. Some animals are good for riding, some are good for milking; some are good for food and some are better used as guards. And He made man their controller and like an authorised king above all of them.

If you also ponder over this universe either in every respect or in a part of it, you will see a lot of wonders. If you deeply reflect and you are sincere with yourself and free yourself from the noose of whims, caprices and blind imitation, you will know with certainty that this universe was created by the All-Wise, All-Powerful and All-Knower, Who measured it in the best manner and arranged it in the best form. You will also know with certainty that it is simply impossible that the Creator should be two; He is only One Lord beside Whom there is none other worthy of worship and that had there been any other god in the heavens and the earth, their affairs would have been corrupted, their order disrupted and their welfare broken down.

If you however insist on attributing the creation to others beside the Creator, what will you say of the mechanism that revolves around a river whose tools and composition have been perfected and excellently measured that the observer does not see any defect in it or its picture. This river is situated in the middle of a long garden

in which there are different kinds of fruits that get their water from this river; and there is in this garden a caretaker who brings its disunited parts together and perfectly takes care of it so that nothing of it becomes defected and nothing of its fruits becomes decayed. This caretaker then portions out its parts to the outlets according to man's needs and necessities, giving each group what it deserves and portioning it out in this way continuously.

Will you then say that all this happened without the hand of any creator, who has freedom of choice and is a planner? Will you say that the existence of that mechanism and garden is just accidental without any creator or planner? Can you imagine what your reason will tell you if all these were to come to being accidentally? Can you imagine as to where your reason will direct you and counsel you about?<sup>1</sup>

### **The underlying reasons:**

After all these reflections over the creation of the universe, we deem it fit to mention some of the reasons for which Allaah created these huge beings and astounding signs.

1. To subject them to man: When Allaah decreed to create a successor on this earth that would be worshipping Him and inhabit the earth; He created all these things for him, that he might have an upright life and have matters of his present life and that of his final abode put right for him. Allaah says,

﴿ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمْ مَّا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ جَمِيعًا مِنْهُ ۗ ﴾

---

<sup>1</sup> This section is expunged from different places from the book, "Miftaahu daaris-sa 'aadat, p 251-269.

And has subjected to you all that is in the heavens and all that is in the earth; it is all as a favor and kindness from Him."<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ وَأَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَأَخْرَجَ بِهِ مِنَ الثَّمَرَاتِ رِزْقًا لَكُمْ ۗ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمْ الْفَلَكَ لِتَجْرِيَ فِي الْبَحْرِ بِأَمْرِهِ ۗ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمْ الْأَنْهَارَ ﴿١٦﴾ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمْ الشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ دَائِبَيْنِ ۗ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمْ اللَّيْلَ وَالنَّهَارَ ﴿١٧﴾ وَءَاتَاكُمْ مِنْ كُلِّ مَا سَأَلْتُمُوهُ ۚ وَإِنْ تَعُدُّوا نِعْمَتَ اللَّهِ لَا تَحْصُوهَا ۗ إِنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ لَظَلُومٌ كَفَّارٌ ﴿١٨﴾ ﴾

"Allâh is He Who has created the heavens and the earth and sends down water (rain) from the sky, and thereby brought forth fruits as provision for you; and He has made the ships to be of service to you, that they may sail through the sea by His Command; and He has made rivers (also) to be of service to you. And He has made the sun and the moon, both constantly pursuing their courses, to be of service to you; and He has made the night and the day, to be of service to you. And He gave you of all that you asked for, and if you count the Blessings of Allâh, never will you be able to count them. Verily! Man is indeed an extreme wrong-doer, a disbeliever (an extreme ingrate, who denies Allâh's Blessings by disbelief, and by worshipping others besides Allâh, and by disobeying Allâh and His Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him))."<sup>2</sup>

2. To make the heavens and the earth and all that is in the universe proofs of Allaah's Lordship and signs of His Oneness. Because, the greatest thing in this life, is to affirm the Lordship of Allaah and His Oneness. And because of the fact that, it is the

<sup>1</sup> Al-Jaathiyah 45:13

<sup>2</sup> Ibraaheem 14:32-34

greatest matter, Allaah has established in its support greatest evidences and signs and proved it with the most convincing proofs. So, Allaah created the heavens, the earth and all other beings to make them evidences for that. That is why statements like, “Among His signs” are mentioned in the abundance like in the following verses.

﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ خَلْقُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ ﴾

“And among His Signs is the creation of the heavens and the earth.”

﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ مَتَاعُ اللَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ ﴾

“And among His Signs is the sleep that you take by night and by day.”

﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ يُرِيكُمُ الْبَرْقَ خَوْفًا وَطَمَعًا ﴾

“And among His Signs is that He shows you the lightning, for fear and for hope.”

﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ أَنْ تَقُومَ السَّمَاءُ وَالْأَرْضُ بِأَمْرِهِ ۗ ﴾

“And among His Signs is that the heavens and the earth stand by His Command.”<sup>1</sup>

3. To make them evidences of the existence of the Day of Resurrection, since the life is two lives, a life of this world and a life

---

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Room 30:22-25

of the Hereafter though the life of the Hereafter is the real. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَا هَذِهِ الْحَيَاةُ الدُّنْيَا إِلَّا لَهُوٌّ وَلَعِبٌ وَإِنَّ الدَّارَ الْآخِرَةَ لَهِيَ الْحَيَوَانُ لَوْ كَانُوا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴾

*"And this life of the world is only amusement and play! Verily, the home of the Hereafter – that is the life indeed (i.e., the eternal life that will never end), if they but knew."*<sup>1</sup>

This is because the home of the Hereafter is the home of recompense and reckoning and there is there eternal bliss for those who deserve it and eternal torment for those who deserve it. Since man cannot reach that home except after he dies and is resurrected; its existence is denied by those whose relationship with their Lord has been cut, whose nature has suffered a relapse and whose sense of reasoning has been damaged. It is because of this that Allaah established proofs and evidences in order that souls might believe and hearts might have conviction; for reproduction of the soul is much easier than its first creation and the creation of the heavens and the earth is greater than the reproduction of man. Allaah says,

﴿ وَهُوَ الَّذِي يَبْدَأُ الْخَلْقَ ثُمَّ يُعِيدُهُ وَهُوَ أَهْوَنُ عَلَيْهِ ﴾

*"And He it is Who originates the creation, then will repeat it (after it has been perished) and this is easier for Him."*<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ankaboot 29:64

<sup>2</sup> Ar-Room 30:27

﴿ لَخَلْقِ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ خَلْقِ النَّاسِ وَلَكِنَّ أَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴾ ﴿٥٧﴾

*"The creation of the heavens and the earth is indeed greater than the creation of mankind, yet most of mankind know not."*<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ اللَّهُ الَّذِي رَفَعَ السَّمَوَاتِ بِغَيْرِ عَمَدٍ تَرَوْنَهَا ثُمَّ أَسْتَوَىٰ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ وَسَخَّرَ الشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ كُلٌّ يَجْرِي لِأَجَلٍ مُّسَمًّى يُدَبِّرُ الْأَمْرَ يُفَصِّلُ الْآيَاتِ لَعَلَّكُمْ بِلِقَاءِ رَبِّكُمْ تُوقِنُونَ ﴾ ﴿٢١﴾

*"Allâh is He Who raised the heavens without any pillars that you can see. Then, He rose above (Istawâ) the Throne (really in a manner that suits His Majesty). He has subjected the sun and the moon (to continue going round), each running (its course) for a term appointed. He regulates all affairs; explaining the Ayât (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.) in detail, that you may believe with certainty in the meeting with your Lord."*<sup>2</sup>

After all this O man! If this entire universe has been subjected to you and all its signs and proofs have been shown to you, you will testify that there is no Lord worthy of worship except Allaah Alone Who has no partner. When you have known that your resurrection and life after death is easier than the creation of the heavens and the earth, that you shall meet your Lord Who will call you to account for your deeds and you have known that all this universe

<sup>1</sup> Ghaafir 40:57

<sup>2</sup> Ar-Ra'd 13:2



worships its Lord that all His creatures glorify their Lord with praises as confirmed by Allaah,

﴿ يُسَبِّحُ لِلَّهِ مَا فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَمَا فِي الْأَرْضِ الْمَلِكِ الْقَدُّوسِ الْعَزِيزِ الْحَكِيمِ ﴿١﴾ ﴾

*"Whatsoever is in the heavens and whatsoever is in the earth glorifies Allāh, the King (of everything), the Holy, the All-Mighty, the All-Wise."*<sup>1</sup>

That, they all prostrate for His Majesty as He says,

﴿ أَلَمْ تَرَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَسْجُدُ لَهُ مَنْ فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَمَنْ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَالشَّمْسُ وَالْقَمَرُ  
وَالنُّجُومُ وَالْجِبَالُ وَالشَّجَرُ وَالدَّوَابُّ وَكَثِيرٌ مِّنَ النَّاسِ ۗ وَكَثِيرٌ حَقَّ عَلَيْهِ الْعَذَابُ  
وَمَنْ يُّنِ اللَّهُ فَمَا لَهُ مِن مُّكْرِمٍ ۗ إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَفْعَلُ مَا يَشَاءُ ﴿٢﴾ ﴾

*"See you not that whoever is in the heavens and whoever is on the earth, and the sun, and the moon, and the stars, and the mountains, and the trees, and Ad-Dawāb (moving (living) creatures, beasts), and many of mankind prostrate themselves to Allah. But there are many (men) on whom the punishment is justified. And whomsoever Allāh disgraces, none can honor him. Verily! Allāh does what He wills."*<sup>2</sup>

Even these beings worship their Lord in a way that suits them as explained by Allaah in this verse,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Jumu'ah 62:1

<sup>2</sup> Al-Hajj 22:18

﴿ أَلَمْ تَرَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَسْجُدُ لَهُ مَنْ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَالطَّيْرِ صَافَّتِ كُلُّ قَدِّ عِلْمٍ صَلَاتَهُ وَتَسْبِيحَهُ ﴾<sup>1</sup>

*"See you not (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) that Allâh, He it is Whom glorify whosoever is in the heavens and the earth, and the birds with wings out-spread (in their flight). Of each one He (Allâh) knows indeed his Salât (prayer) and his glorification, (or everyone knows his Salât (prayer) and his glorification)."*<sup>1</sup>

If your entire body does actually work in order according to the decree of Allaah and His regulation: the heart, the lungs, the liver and all other parts of the body submit and surrender to their Lord... Will your optional decision after all this be between belief in your Lord and disbelief in Him? Will your decision be antipathy towards and deviation from this blessed path of the world around you and even of your body?

Actually, the completely sane man will consider himself far above choosing antipathy and deviation in the vastness of this great universe.

---

<sup>1</sup> An-Noor 24:41

## **Creating and Honouring Man**

It was a decision of Allaah to create a creature that could inhabit this universe and His choice fell on man. It is also in accordance with His Divine Wisdom that the matter from which man was created was the earth. He originated his creation from clay and then moulded him on this beautiful shape that he has now. When he has become completely perfect in that shape, He breathed life into him through His Spirit (Angel Jibreel -Gabriel) and He made him become man in the best form; provided him with the ability to hear, see, move and speak. Then his Lord made him live in Paradise, taught him all that he needed to know, made lawful for him all that was in Paradise and forbade him from a single tree – as a test for him.

Allaah wanted to show man's position and standing; so He commanded His Angels to prostrate for him. All of the Angels prostrated but Satan arrogantly and obstinately refused to prostrate. So Allaah became angry with him for his disobedience and expelled him from His Mercy because of his arrogance. Satan asked Allaah to extend his life and give him respite till the Day of Resurrection. So, Allaah extended his life till the Day of Resurrection.

Satan became envious of Adam because of the preference he and his children were given over him. He swore by His Lord that he would mislead all the children of Adam, that he would come to them from their front and rear, and from their left and from their right except the sincere, pious and truthful slaves of Allaah among them, for such Allaah has protected against the evil plans of Satan. Allaah warned Adam of the evil plan of Satan, but Satan tempted Adam and his wife Hawwa in order to get them out of Paradise and to uncover for them that that was hidden from them of their private parts. He swore by Allaah to them that he was a sincere well-wisher for them and that Allaah had not forbidden them from that tree save they should become angels or become of the immortals.

Having been influenced by the deception of Satan, Adam and Hawwa ate of the forbidden tree and the first punishment that afflicted them for their disobedience of Allaah's command was that, which that was hidden from them of their private parts became exposed and Allaah reminded them of His warning about the tricks of Satan.

Adam then sought for the forgiveness of his Lord. So Allaah forgave Him, accepted his repentance, chose him and guided him. He then ordered him to descend from the Paradise where he was living, to the earth wherein there was his abode and his enjoyment for a time. He also told him that it was from earth that he was created, that on it he would live and die and that it is from it that he would be resurrected.

Adam and his wife Hawwa then descended to the earth and their children procreated and they all used to worship Allaah, because their father Adam was a Prophet. Allaah tells us this story in the glorious Qur'aan where He says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ خَلَقْنَاكُمْ ثُمَّ صَوَّرْنَاكُمْ ثُمَّ قُلْنَا لِلْمَلَائِكَةِ اسْجُدُوا لِآدَمَ فَسَجَدُوا إِلَّا إِبْلِيسَ لَمْ يَكُنْ مِنَ السَّاجِدِينَ ﴿٣٦﴾ قَالَ مَا مَنَعَكَ أَلَّا تَسْجُدَ إِذْ أَمَرْتُكَ قَالَ أَنَا خَيْرٌ مِنْهُ خَلَقْتَنِي مِنْ نَارٍ وَخَلَقْتَهُ مِنْ طِينٍ ﴿٣٧﴾ قَالَ فَاهْبِطْ مِنْهَا فَمَا يَكُونُ لَكَ أَنْ تَتَكَبَّرَ فِيهَا فَاخْرُجْ إِنَّكَ مِنَ الصَّاغِرِينَ ﴿٣٨﴾ قَالَ أَنْظِرْنِي إِلَى يَوْمِ يُبْعَثُونَ ﴿٣٩﴾ قَالَ إِنَّكَ مِنَ الْمُنظَرِينَ ﴿٤٠﴾ قَالَ فَبِمَا أَغْوَيْتَنِي لَأَقْعُدَنَّ لَهُمْ صِرَاطَكَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ ﴿٤١﴾ ثُمَّ لَأَنْتَهُنَّ مِنْ بَيْنِ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمِنْ خَلْفِهِمْ وَعَنْ أَيْمَنِهِمْ وَعَنْ شَمَائِلِهِمْ وَلَا يَجِدُ أَكْثَرُهُمْ شَاكِرِينَ ﴿٤٢﴾ قَالَ أَخْرُجْ مِنْهَا مَذْءُومًا مَدْحُورًا ﴿٤٣﴾ لَمَنْ تَبِعَكَ مِنْهُمْ لَأَمْلَأَنَّ جَهَنَّمَ مِنْكُمْ أَجْمَعِينَ ﴿٤٤﴾ وَيَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنْ الْجَنَّةِ فَكُلًّا مِنْ حَيْثُ شِئْتُمْ وَلَا

تَقَرَّبَا هَذِهِ الشَّجَرَةَ فَتَكُونَا مِنَ الظَّالِمِينَ ﴿٢٠﴾ فَوَسَّسَ لَهُمَا الشَّيْطَانُ لِيُبْدِيَ لَهُمَا مَا وُورِيَ عَنْهُمَا مِنْ سَوْءِ بَيْتِهِمَا وَقَالَ مَا نَهَاكُمَا رَبُّكُمَا عَنْ هَذِهِ الشَّجَرَةِ إِلَّا أَنْ تَكُونَا مَلَكَتَيْنِ أَوْ تَكُونَا مِنَ الْخَالِدِينَ ﴿٢١﴾ وَقَاسَمَهُمَا إِنِّي لَكُمَا لَمِنَ النَّاصِحِينَ ﴿٢٢﴾ فَدَلَّاهُمَا بِغُرُورٍ ۗ فَلَمَّا ذَاقَا الشَّجَرَةَ بَدَتْ لَهُمَا سَوْءُ بَيْتِهِمَا وَطَفِقَا يَخْتَصِفَانِ عَنْهَا مِنْ وَرَقِ الْجَنَّةِ ۗ وَنَادَاهُمَا رَبُّهُمَا أَلَمْ أَنْهَكُمَا عَنْ تِلْكَ الشَّجَرَةِ وَأَقُلْتُ لَكُمَا إِنَّ الشَّيْطَانَ لَكُمَا عَدُوٌّ مُبِينٌ ﴿٢٣﴾ قَالَا رَبَّنَا ظَلَمْنَا أَنْفُسَنَا وَإِن لَّمْ تَغْفِرْ لَنَا وَتَرْحَمْنَا لَنَكُونَنَّ مِنَ الْخَاسِرِينَ ﴿٢٤﴾ قَالَ أَهْبِطُوا بَعْضُكُمْ لِبَعْضٍ عَدُوٌّ ۗ وَلَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ وَمَتَاعٌ إِلَىٰ حِينٍ ﴿٢٥﴾ قَالَ فِيهَا تَحْيَوْنَ وَفِيهَا تَمُوتُونَ وَمِنْهَا تَخْرَجُونَ ﴿٢٦﴾ ﴿

And surely, We created you (your father Adam) and then gave you shape (the noble shape of a human being); then We told the angels, "Prostrate yourselves to Adam", and they prostrated themselves, except Iblis (Satan), he refused to be of those who prostrated themselves. (Allâh) said: "What prevented you (O Iblis) that you did not prostrate yourself, when I commanded you?" Iblis said: "I am better than him (Adam), You created me from fire, and him You created from clay." (Allâh) said: "(O Iblis) get down from this (Paradise), it is not for you to be arrogant here. Get out, for you are of those humiliated and disgraced." (Iblis) said: "Allow me respite till the Day they are raised up (i.e. the Day of Resurrection)." (Allâh) said: "You are of those respited." (Iblis) said: "Because You have sent me astray, surely I will sit in wait against them (human beings) on Your Straight Path. Then I will come to them from before them and behind them, from their right and from their left, and You will not find most of them as thankful ones (i.e. they will not be dutiful to You)." (Allâh) said (to Iblis) "Get out from this (Paradise) disgraced and expelled. Whoever of them (mankind) will follow you, then surely I will fill Hell with you all." "And O Adam! Dwell you and your wife in Paradise, and eat thereof

as you both wish, but approach not this tree otherwise you both will be of the *Zâlimûn* (unjust and wrong-doers)." Then *Shaitân* (Satan) whispered suggestions to them both in order to uncover that which was hidden from them of their private parts (before); he said: "Your Lord did not forbid you this tree save you should become angels or become of the immortals." And he (*Shaitân* (Satan)) swore by *Allâh* to them both (saying): "Verily, I am one of the sincere well-wishers for you both." So he misled them with deception. Then when they tasted of the tree, that which was hidden from them of their shame (private parts) became manifest to them and they began to cover themselves with the leaves of Paradise (in order to cover their shame). And their Lord called out to them (saying): "Did I not forbid you that tree and tell you: Verily, *Shaitân* (Satan) is an open enemy unto you?" They said: "Our Lord! We have wronged ourselves. If You forgive us not, and bestow not upon us Your Mercy, we shall certainly be of the losers." (*Allâh*) said: "Get down, one of you an enemy to the other (i.e. Adam, *Hawwâ'* (Eve), and *Shaitân* (Satan)) On earth will be a dwelling-place for you and an enjoyment for a time." He said: "Therein you shall live, and therein you shall die, and from it you shall be brought out (i.e. resurrected)."<sup>1</sup>

Consider the greatness of Allaah's work in man. He created him in the best form, clothed him with traits of honour like intellect, knowledge, eloquence, art of speaking, beautiful figure, moderate body, ability to acquire knowledge through analogical deduction and thinking and ability to acquire noble characteristics like, righteousness, acts of obedience and submission to Allaah. Far is his condition while he was just a drop of sperm kept in the womb of his mother from his creation while the Angel will enter upon him in the Paradise.

﴿ فَتَبَارَكَ اللَّهُ أَحْسَنُ الْخَالِقِينَ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:11-25

"So blessed be Allâh, the Best of Creators."<sup>1</sup>

This world is a village and man is its inhabitant. All is preoccupied because of him and all is made to work for his interests. All other creatures are made to serve him and provide for his needs. The angels are charged to protect him during day and night. Those of them who are charged with provision of rain and plants strive to provide him with his sustenance; orbits are made to surrender to him and revolve in his services; the sun, moon and stars are all subjected to move in line with his time reckoning and for the betterment of his food arrangement. The aerial world with its winds, clouds, birds and all that it contains is also subjected to him. So is the lower world with all its seas and rivers, its trees and fruits, its plants and animals and all that is in it. Allaah says,

﴿ اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ وَأَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَأَخْرَجَ بِهِ مِنَ الثَّمَرَاتِ رِزْقًا لَكُمْ ۗ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمُ الْفُلْكَ لِتَجْرِيَ فِي الْبَحْرِ بِأَمْرِهِ ۗ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمْ الْأَنْهَارَ ﴿١٠١﴾ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمُ الشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ دَائِبَيْنِ ۗ وَسَخَّرَ لَكُمُ اللَّيْلَ وَالنَّهَارَ ﴿١٠٢﴾ وَءَاتَاكُمْ مِنْ كُلِّ مَا سَأَلْتُمُوهُ ۚ وَإِنْ تَعُدُّوا نِعْمَتَ اللَّهِ لَا تَحْصُوهَا ۗ إِنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ لَظَلُومٌ كَفَّارٌ ﴿١٠٣﴾ ﴾

"Allâh is He Who has created the heavens and the earth and sends down water (rain) from the sky, and thereby brought forth fruits as provision for you; and He has made the ships to be of service to you, that they may sail through the sea by His Command; and He has made rivers (also) to be of service to you. And He has made the sun and the moon, both constantly pursuing their courses, to be of service to you; and He has made the night and the day, to be of service to you. And He gave you of all that you asked for, and if you count the Blessings of Allâh, never will you be able to count

<sup>1</sup> Al-Mu'minoon 23:14

*them. Verily! Man is indeed an extreme wrong-doer, a disbeliever (an extreme ingrate, who denies Allâh's Blessings by disbelief, and by worshipping others besides Allâh, and by disobeying Allâh and His Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him)).”<sup>1</sup>*

To complete His honour on man, He created for him all that he needs in his worldly life and all that he needs that can make him attain the highest positions in the Hereafter. He as such, revealed to him His Books and sent to him His Messengers explaining to him the Law of Allaah and calling him unto it.

Then Allaah created for him from his own self – meaning from Adam himself – a wife, so that he might enjoy the pleasure of living with her, in response to his natural needs, be it psychological, intellectual and physical. He then found with her comfort, tranquillity and stability and both of them found in their togetherness peace, contentedness, love and mercy; because of their physical, psychological and nervous composition, both of them are made to respond to the desires of each other and both are made to be in harmony in the process of producing new generations. The souls of both are enriched with these feelings and their relationship is filled with comfort for the soul and nerves, peace for the body and mind, stability for the life and subsistence, familiarity for souls and conscience and a tranquillity for the man and woman on an equal basis.

Allaah then chose the believers among mankind and made them his friends. He made them obey Him and work for Him according to his Laws in order to make them qualify to live in His Paradise. He chose among them Prophets, Messengers, saints and martyrs and blessed them in this world with the best favour that human souls can enjoy: worshipping Allaah, obeying Him and supplicating to him. He also distinguished them with great favours – that others cannot get – among which are: peace, tranquillity and happiness, and greater than all this is the fact that they know the truth that was brought by the Messengers and believe in it. Allaah then keeps for

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibraaheem 14:32-34



them – in the Hereafter – the everlasting bliss and great success that befit His generosity, glory be to Him. He will also reward their belief in Him and their sincerity to Him and will give them more out of His Bounty.

### **The position of woman:**

In Islaam, the woman is accorded a high position, which she was not accorded in any of the previous religions and which no nation will accord her but Islaam. This is because, both man and woman on equal basis share the honour that Islaam conferred on mankind. Humans are equal before rules of Allaah in this world as they will be equal as regards His reward and recompense on the Last Day. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ كَرَّمْنَا بَنِي آدَمَ ﴾

*“And indeed, We have honoured the children of Adam.”<sup>1</sup>*

He also says,

﴿ لِلرِّجَالِ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا تَرَكَ الْوَالِدَانِ وَالْأَقْرَبُونَ وَلِلنِّسَاءِ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا تَرَكَ الْوَالِدَانِ وَالْأَقْرَبُونَ ﴾

*“There is a share for men and a share for women from what is left by parents and those nearest related.”<sup>2</sup>*

﴿ وَهُنَّ مِثْلُ الَّذِي عَلَيْنَ بِالْعُرُوفِ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Israa 17:70.

<sup>2</sup> An-Nisaa 4: 7

*"And they (women) have rights (over their husbands as regards living expenses) similar (to those of their husbands) over them (as regards obedience and respect) to what is reasonable."<sup>1</sup>*

﴿ وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتُ بَعْضُهُمْ أَوْلِيَاءُ بَعْضٍ ﴾

*"The believers, men and women are Auliyah' (helpers, supporters, friends, protectors) of one another."<sup>2</sup>*

﴿ وَقَضَىٰ رَبُّكَ أَلَّا تَعْبُدُوا إِلَّا إِيَّاهُ وَبِالْوَالِدَيْنِ إِحْسَانًا ۖ إِمَّا يَبُلُغَنَّ عِنْدَكَ الْكِبَرَ أَحَدُهُمَا أَوْ كِلَاهُمَا فَلَا تَقُلْ لَهُمَا أَفًّا وَلَا تَهْزُهُمَا وَقُلْ لَهُمَا قَوْلًا كَرِيمًا ﴿٢١﴾ وَأَخْفِضْ لَهُمَا جَنَاحَ الذُّلِّ مِنَ الرَّحْمَةِ وَقُلْ رَبِّ ارْحَمْهُمَا كَمَا رَبَّيَانِي صَغِيرًا ﴿٢٢﴾ ﴾

*"And your Lord has decreed that you worship none but Him. And that you be dutiful to your parents. If one of them or both of them attain old age in your life, say not to them a word of disrespect, nor shout at them but address them in terms of honour. And lower unto them a wing of submission and humility through mercy, and say; 'My Lord! Bestow on them Your Mercy as they did bring me up when I was young."<sup>3</sup>*

﴿ فَاسْتَجَابَ لَهُمْ رَبُّهُمْ أَنِّي لَا أُضِيعُ عَمَلَ عَمَلٍ مِّنْكُمْ مِّنْ ذَكَرٍ أَوْ أُنْتَىٰ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Baqarah 2: 228

<sup>2</sup> At-Tawbah 9:71

<sup>3</sup> Al-Israa 17: 23-24.

"So their Lord accepted their supplication and answered them (saying); 'Never will I allow to be lost the work of any of you, be he male or female.'<sup>1</sup>

﴿ مَنْ عَمِلَ صَالِحًا مِّنْ ذَكَرٍ أَوْ أُنْثَىٰ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ فَلَنُحْيِيَنَّهٗ حَيٰوةً طَيِّبَةً ۖ وَلَنَجْزِيَنَّهُمْ أَجْرَهُمْ بِأَحْسَنِ مَا كَانُوا يَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١٧﴾ ﴾

"Whoever works righteousness - whether male or female - while he (or she) is a true believer (of Islâmic Monotheism) verily, to him We will give a good life (in this world with respect, contentment and lawful provision), and We shall pay them certainly a reward in proportion to the best of what they used to do (i.e. Paradise in the Hereafter).<sup>2</sup>

﴿ وَمَنْ يَعْمَلْ مِّنَ الصَّالِحَاتِ مِمَّنْ ذَكَرٍ أَوْ أُنْثَىٰ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ فَأُولَٰئِكَ يَدْخُلُونَ الْجَنَّةَ وَلَا يُظْلَمُونَ نَقِيرًا ﴿١٨﴾ ﴾

"And whoever does righteous good deeds, male or female, and is a (true) believer (in the Oneness of Allâh (Muslim)) such will enter Paradise and not the least injustice, even to the size of a speck on the back of a date-stone, will be done to them."<sup>3</sup>

This honour that the woman enjoys in Islaam has no equal in any other religion, creed or law. Roman civilization had it established that woman should be a slave and a subordinate of man and that she should absolutely has no rights at all. There was even a great conference in Rome where affairs of the woman were discussed. The conclusion reached at the conference was that, the woman

<sup>1</sup> Aal-Imraan 3:195

<sup>2</sup> An-Nahl 16: 97

<sup>3</sup> An-Nisaa 4: 124

was a lifeless being and as such could not have share in the life of the Hereafter and that she was impure.

In Athens, woman used to be regarded as a scrap. She would be sold and bought like any other commodity and she was being regarded an abomination of Satan's handiwork.

According to the ancient Indian statutes, the plague, death, hell, poison of serpents and fire are better than woman. Her right to live used to end with the death of her husband – who was regarded as her master. When she saw the corpse of her husband being burnt, she must throw herself into it and if she did not, she would be accursed.

As for Judaism, the following judgement was passed on her in the Old Testament.

"I applied mine heart to know and to search and to seek out the wisdom and the reason of things and to know the wickedness of folly even of foolishness in madness.. and I find more bitter than death the woman and whose hearth is snares and nets and her hands as bands whoso pleaseth God shall escape from hell but the sinner shall be taken by her."<sup>1</sup>

Such was the condition of woman in the ancient times. As for medieval and contemporary times, the following events explain that.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ecclesiastes 7:25-26. It is known that the Old Testament is hallowed and believed in by both the Christians and the Jews.

Note: Christians of past and present ages hallow the two testaments but nowadays, they only regard the old testament as a holy book which they are not obliged to follow. As for the Jews, they never regard the New Testament as a holy book for they never believed in the Prophet [i.e. Jesus] to whom it is ascribed. =AA.

The Danish writer, Wieth Kordsten explained the position of the Catholic Church as regards woman when he said, "During the medieval times, the concern that was had for European woman was very limited and this is in conformity with the view of the Catholic creed that used to regard woman as a second-class human being."

In France, a conference was held in the year 586 A.D. where the issue of woman was discussed as to whether she should be regarded as a human being or not. At the end of the discussion, the discussants concluded that she was a human being but that she was created for the service of man.

In French law, article 217 says; "The married woman- even if her marriage is based on separation between her right of ownership and that of her husband- should not give anyone ownership of anything of her property with or without compensation except with the participation of her husband in the transaction or his written consent to that."

In England, Henry the VIII prohibited the English woman from reading the Holy Book, until 1850, women were not considered citizens of England and up till 1882, they had no personal rights.<sup>1</sup>

As for the condition of woman in contemporary Europe, America and other industrial nations, she is regarded as a common creature that should be utilized for commercial purposes, for she is a part of commercial advertisement. This has even reached a situation where she is stripped naked in order to advertise commodities on her body. Her body and honour have become desecrated based on regulations laid down by men in order to make her an object of enjoyment everywhere.

The contemporary woman is an abject of care and attention as long as she is able to give out her wealth, intelligence and body. But when she becomes old and loses her means of giving, the

---

<sup>1</sup> Silsilatu muqaaranatil adyaan – Dr. Ahmad Shalaby 3/210-213

society individually and collectively abandons her and she lives lonely in her house or in the sanatorium.

Compare the above – although they cannot be equal – with what the Noble Qur'aan says,

﴿وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتُ بَعْضُهُمْ أَوْلِيَاءُ بَعْضٍ﴾

*"The believers, men and women are Auliyâ' (helpers, supporters, friends, protectors) of one another."*<sup>1</sup>

﴿وَهُنَّ مِثْلُ الَّذِي عَلَيْنَ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ﴾

*"And they (women) have rights (over their husbands as regards living expenses) similar (to those of their husbands) over them (as regards obedience and respect) to what is reasonable."*<sup>2</sup>

﴿وَقَضَىٰ رَبُّكَ أَلَّا تَعْبُدُوا إِلَّا إِيَّاهُ وَبِالْوَالِدَيْنِ إِحْسَانًا ۖ إِمَّا يَنْتَلِعَنَّ مِنْ دُونِكَ الْأَكْبَرِ

أَحَدُهُمَا أَوْ كِلَاهُمَا فَلَا تَقُلْ لَهُمَا أَفٍّ وَلَا تَنْهَرَهُمَا وَقُلْ لَهُمَا قَوْلًا كَرِيمًا ﴿١٠١﴾

وَأَخْفِضْ لَهُمَا جَنَاحَ الذُّلِّ مِنَ الرَّحْمَةِ وَقُلْ رَبِّ ارْحَمْهُمَا كَمَا رَبَّيْتَانِي صَغِيرًا ﴿١٠٢﴾

﴿

*"And your Lord has decreed that you worship none but Him. And that you be dutiful to your parents. If one of them or both of them attain old age in your life, say not to them a word of disrespect, nor shout at them but address them in terms of honour. And lower unto them a wing of submission and humility through mercy, and say;*

<sup>1</sup> At-Tawbah 9:71

<sup>2</sup> Al-Baqarah 2: 228

*'My Lord! Bestow on them Your Mercy as they did bring me up when I was young.'*<sup>1</sup>

*"And your Lord has decreed that you worship none but Him. And that you be dutiful to your parents. If one of them or both of them attain old age in your life, say not to them a word of disrespect, nor shout at them but address them in terms of honour. And lower unto them the wing of submission and humility through mercy, and say: 'My Lord! Bestow on them your mercy as they did bring me up when I was young.'*<sup>2</sup>

While Allaah honours woman, He makes it clear to all mankind that He created her to be mother, wife, daughter and sister; and ordained for these roles, special regulations that are peculiar to her.

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Israa 17: 23-24.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Israa 17: 23-24

## Why was man created?

It has been discussed in the previous chapter that, Allaah created Adam and created for him his wife, Hawwa and made them live in Paradise. Then Adam disobeyed his Lord and later sought for His forgiveness. Allaah then accepted his repentance and guided him. Allaah then ordered him to go out of the Paradise and descend unto the earth. Allaah, glory be Him and He be exalted has in that, a wisdom which human intelligence cannot perceive and which their tongue cannot describe. We are going to mention here some of those wisdoms and underlying reasons.

1. Allaah created the creation for the purpose of worshipping Him. He says,

﴿ وَمَا خَلَقْتُ الْجِنَّ وَالْإِنْسَ إِلَّا لِيَعْبُدُونِ ﴾

*"And I (Allâh) created not the jinn and mankind except that they should worship Me (Alone)."*<sup>1</sup>

It is also known that the perfection of the worship that is required of man cannot take place in the abode of bliss and eternity but in the abode of trials and tribulation. The abode of eternity is that of bliss, not that of tests and commandments.

2. Allaah wanted to take among mankind Prophets, Messengers, friend and martyrs whom He would love and who would love Him. He then left them alone with his enemies and put them to trial by them. So when they preferred Him above all other things and sacrificed their lives and properties in order to gain His pleasure and love, they attained of His love and pleasure what they could not have attained without that initially. So the status of prophethood and martyrdom is of the best degrees before Allaah and could not

---

<sup>1</sup> Adh-Dhaariyaat 51: 56



have attained that except by the way decreed by Allaah that Adam and his offspring had to descend to the earth.

3. Allaah is the only True and Evident King. The King is the One Who commands and forbids; rewards and punishes; disgraces and honours; strengthens and debases. Allaah's sovereignty therefore necessitates that he sends Adam and his offspring to an abode in which the rules of sovereignty will be implemented on them and then move them to an abode where there is reward for all that they did.

4. Allaah created Adam from a handful of all soils of the earth; and there is good and bad and low and high in the land. Allaah knows that there are among – the children of Adam – those who are unsuitable to stay with Him in His House; therefore, He made Adam descend to an abode where He distinguishes between the good and bad ones. Then Allaah chose for them two distinct abodes: He made the righteous ones dwellers of His Abode (made them enter Paradise), and made the evil ones dwellers of the abode of misery (Hell-Fire).

5. To Allaah belong the Beautiful Names. Among His Names are: Al-Ghafoor (the Oft-Forgiving), Ar-Raheem (the Most-Gracious). Al-Afuww (Oft-Pardoning), Al-Haleem (Most-Forbearing). Since the impacts of these names must manifest, the Wisdom of Allaah necessitates that Adam and his children must descend to an abode where the impacts of the Beautiful Names of Allaah could materialise on them. So that He might forgive whoever He wills, have mercy on whomever He wills, pardon whosoever He wills and forbear for whosoever He wills and other different ways in which His Names and Attributes can be manifest.

6. Allaah created Adam and his children from a composition that is naturally inclined to good and evil, responsive to the causes of lusts and temptations and to the causes of reason and knowledge. He created in him reason and lust and created in both necessary factors so that His Will might be accomplished and that He might show to His slaves His greatness in Wisdom, Might; and His

Mercy, Kindness and Benevolence in His Authority and Sovereignty. He then, out of His Wisdom sent Adam and his children to the earth so that the test might take place therein and impacts of man's preparedness for these factors and his responsiveness to them might become manifest, and Allaah may then use that basis to award honour or disgrace to whom it is due.

7. Belief in the Unseen is the useful belief. As for the belief in the seen, everyone will believe on the Day of Resurrection. If people were created in the Abode of Bliss (Paradise), they would not have attained the degree of belief in the Unseen that ends in enjoyment and honour. It is for this reason that Allaah sent them to the abode in which they could have opportunity to believe in the Unseen.

8. Allaah wants by that, to show His slaves on whom He has bestowed His favour, the perfection of that favour and its greatness so that they might thank Allaah and love Him the most and have the fullest enjoyment of the bliss, which Allaah has bestowed on them. Allaah therefore, shows them what He did to His enemies and the punishment that He has prepared for them. He also makes them witness the highest kinds of bliss, which He has bestowed on them, so that their joy might increase. This is an aspect of completing His favours on them. Therefore, to make them achieve all this, He must send them to the earth, put them to test and then make whosoever He wills to succeed out of mercy and kindness from Him, and disgrace whosoever He wills among them out of His wisdom and justice, for He is All-Knower, All-Wise.

9. Allaah wants Adam and his children to go back to the Paradise while they are in the best state. So before they enter it, He wants to make them taste of the hardship, sorrow and distress of the world so that the value of entering Paradise in the Hereafter will be great in their estimation, for it is the opposite of an object that shows its beauty.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See: Miftaah daaris-Sa'aadah 1 / 6-11

After the origin of man has been made clear, it is now appropriate to explain his need for the true religion.

## **Man's Need for Religion**

Man's need for religion is greater than his need for other necessities of life. For, man must know the things that please Allaah as well as those that displease Him. He must also carry out activities that can bring him benefits and others that can avert from him harm. So, it is the Divine Law that distinguishes between the deeds that benefit and those that bring harm. That is Allaah's justice in His creation and His Light among His servants and it is not possible for people to live without Divine Law with which they can differentiate between what they should do and what they should not do.

If man actually has a will, he must then know what he wants. Does he want what will benefit him or what will harm him? Does he want what will reform him or what will corrupt him? Some people know this naturally, some know it through application of their sense of reasoning and some yet do not know it except through explanation by the Messengers and their guidance.<sup>1</sup>

However the atheistic and materialistic thoughts may be widespread and adorned; and ideologies and theories thrive, individuals and societies will never do without true religion. For these ideologies can never provide for man's spiritual and physical needs. And the more man goes deeper in them, the more he is convinced that they cannot give him security nor satiate his thirst and that the true religion is unavoidable.

Ernest Rinan said, "All things that we hold dear can dwindle, and freedom of using one's intelligence, knowledge and expertise can become worthless. But it is impossible for religion to be effaced. It will rather remain a living proof on the futility of material ideology

---

<sup>1</sup> See At-Tadmuriyyah by Shaykhul-Islaam Ibn Taymiyyah p. 213-214; and Miftaahu daaris-Sa'aadah 2 / 383.

that wants to restrict man into despicable narrows of the earthly life.”<sup>1</sup>

Muhammad Fareed Wajdee said: “It is impossible for religious thinking to vanish, for it is the highest and noblest of human mind’s inclinations, not to mention the fact that it is an inclination that elevates man. Rather than dwindle, this inclination shall be increasing. Religious nature of man will always pursue him as long as he can discern what is beautiful and what is ugly and this nature shall continue to increase in him according to sublimity of his mental faculties and progress in his knowledge.”<sup>2</sup>

So if man keeps away from his Lord, it is through the sublimity of his mental faculties and wideness of his knowledge that he recognizes the greatness of his ignorance about his Lord and what is due to Him, and his ignorance of his own self, what is good for him and what is harmful to him; what gives him happiness and what will cause him misery. He will also recognise his ignorance of scientific details like astronomy, science of galaxies, reckoning, nuclear sciences and so forth. It is then that the world will abandon the stage of delusion and arrogance to that of humility and submission and then believe that there is behind these sciences a knowledgeable and Wise One and that there is behind the nature an Able Creator. This reality will then force the impartial scholar to believe in the unseen, to surrender to the upright religion and to respond to the call of natural instinct. But when man withdraws from this path, his nature will relapse and he will come down to the level of dumb animals.

We conclude from all the above, that the true religiosity – that depends on belief in the Oneness of Allaah and performing acts of worship according to His injunctions – is a necessary element of life, so that man actualizes through that, his servitude to Allaah, Lord of all the worlds and attain through that, happiness and safety from destruction, hardship and misery. It is also necessary for

---

<sup>1</sup> See Ad-Deen by Muhammad Abdullah Daraaz p. 87.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 88.

perfecting the theoretical aptitude in man. It is only through it that the intellectual hunger can be satiated, and its highest goals attained.

Equally, religion is a necessary element for purification of the soul and refinement of emotional power, for noble sentiments find in the religion an abundant space and a spring whose water does not dry up where noble sentiments find their goals attained.

It is a necessary element for the perfection of will power because of the support it gives it through great impetus and major means of resisting elements of despair.

In view of this, if there are some who say that man is civil by nature, we must also say: "Man is religious by nature", for man has two powers: scientific speculative power and will power. His complete happiness depends on perfecting his scientific and will power and the perfection of his scientific power cannot take place except by knowing the following:

1. Knowing the True Lord Who is the Creator and the Provider; Who created man from nothingness and bestowed on him favours.
2. Knowing His Names and Attributes and all that is due to Him and understanding the impacts of these Names on His slaves.
3. Knowing the way that leads to Allaah, may He be glorified.
4. Knowing the hindrances and harms that prevent man from knowing the way and the great bliss that the way leads to.
5. Having a real cognisance of your own soul, its needs, recognising what is good for it and what is harm to it, and knowing its qualities and defects.

It is by knowing these five things that man can perfect his scientific power. And perfection of his scientific and will power cannot occur except by respecting the rights of Allaah upon His slaves and carrying out these rights sincerely, truthfully, according to the Sunnah of the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, and as

a testimony of His favour on him. There is no way to perfection of these two powers except by His help. He therefore needs to be guided to the Straight Path which Allaah guided His friends.<sup>1</sup>

After we have known that the True Religion is the Divine support for different powers of the soul, we should also know that religion is the protective shield for the society. This is because human life cannot be alright except through mutual cooperation and this cooperation cannot take place except through a system that regulates human relationships, defines their obligations and guarantees their rights. This system is also in need of a curbing and restraining authority that can prevent the soul from violating the system, encourage it to preserve it, guarantees its relevance and prevents men from desecrating it. What then is this power?

There is not on the face of this earth any power that can match the power of religiosity or even close to that in guaranteeing the respect for order, societal cohesion, stability of it's system and harmonising the means of comfort and tranquillity in the society.

The underlying reason for this is that, man is distinguished from other living things in that, all his voluntary movements and actions are controlled by an inaudible and invincible element. That element is faith, which refines the soul and purifies the limbs. Man, is therefore, always controlled by a true or false belief. If his belief is correct, everything in him will be correct, but if his belief is corrupt, everything in him will be corrupt.

Faith is a spontaneous watcher over man; and it is – as noticed in all men – of two types:

- Belief in the value of moral excellence, human dignity and other ordinary concepts that high-minded people will feel shy to violate even if they were free from external consequences and material recompense.

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Fawaaid 18,19.

- Belief in Allaah – may He be Glorified and Exalted – and the fact that He is Ever-Watchful of the secrets and knows all that is hidden; from Whose Commandments and prohibitions the Islaamic Law derives its power and before Whom the senses profusely feel mortified out of love for Him or fear of Him or both. There is no doubt that this type of faith is the stronger of both in exerting authority over human mind. It is also the stronger in resisting the tornadoes of whims and inconsistency of sentiments and quicker in leaving impacts on the minds of people and their leaders.

It is because of this that religion is the best guarantor for the establishment of relationships among people on the basis of justice and impartiality, which is a necessity in any society. There is no wonder then that religion occupies in the human society the position of the heart in human body.<sup>1</sup>

If this is the position of religion generally – and what we see in today's world is multiplicity of religions and creeds, where each group rejoices in its belief and holds tenaciously to it – what then is the true religion that can achieve for the human mind what it yearns for? And what are the general criteria of the True Religion?

---

<sup>1</sup> See: Ad-deen p. 98, 102.



## Criteria for Identifying True Religion

Every adherent of a creed believes that his creed is the true one, and all followers of a religion believe that their religion is the ideal one and the most upright path. When you ask the followers of adulterated religions or followers of man-made creeds about the proof for their belief, they argue that they found their fathers on a faith and are just following their paths. They then relate narrations and stories whose chains of transmitters are not sound and whose texts are not free from faults and defects. They only depend on inherited books whose authors, recorders and even their original languages and their sources are unknown. They are only mixed-up stories concocted together, magnified and inherited generation after generation without any scholastic verification of their chains of transmitters and precise checking of their texts.

These unknown books, narrations and blind imitations cannot be taken as evidences in matters of religions and beliefs. Or is it possible that all these adulterated religions and man-made creeds are true or false?

It is impossible that all these religions are true, for truth is only one and cannot be numerous. It is also impossible that all these adulterated religions and man-made beliefs are all from Allaah and therefore true. Then, since there are numerous religions and the true is only one, which of them is then the true religion? There should, therefore, be criteria for distinguishing the true religion from the false. If we find that these criteria fit a religion, we know that it is the true religion; and when all or one of these criteria is lacking in any religion, we know that it is a false religion.

The criteria by which we distinguish the true religion from the false ones are:

**One:** That the religion must be from Allaah, revealed through an angel to one of His Messengers in order to convey it to mankind. For the true religion is Allaah's, and it is He Who will recompense

His slaves and take them to reckoning on the Day of Resurrection concerning the religion that He revealed to them. He says,

﴿ إِنَّا أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَيْكَ كَمَا أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَى نُوحٍ وَالنَّبِيِّينَ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ وَأَوْحَيْنَا إِلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَإِسْمَاعِيلَ وَإِسْحَاقَ وَيَعْقُوبَ وَالْأَسْبَاطِ وَعِيسَى وَأَيُّوبَ وَيُونُسَ وَهَارُونَ وَسُلَيْمَانَ وَآتَيْنَا دَاوُدَ زَبُورًا ﴾ ﴿١٦٣﴾

"Verily, We have sent the revelation to you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) as We sent the revelation to Nūh (Noah) and the Prophets after him; We (also) sent the revelation to Ibrāhîm (Abraham), Ismâ'il (Ishmael), Ishâq (Isaac), Ya'qûb (Jacob), and Al-Asbât (the twelve sons of Ya'qûb (Jacob)) 'Isâ (Jesus), Ayyûb (Job), Yûnus (Jonah), Hârûn (Aaron), and Sulaimân (Solomon), and to Dawûd (David) We gave the Zabûr (Psalms)."<sup>1</sup>

He, may He be glorified- also says,

﴿ وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ مِنْ رَسُولٍ إِلَّا نُوحِي إِلَيْهِ أَنَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنَا فَاعْبُدُونِ ﴾ ﴿١٦٤﴾

"And We did not send any Messenger before you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) but We revealed to him (saying): *Lâ ilâha illa Ana* (none has the right to be worshipped but I (Allâh)) so worship Me (Alone and none else)."<sup>2</sup>

Based on the above verses and criteria, any religion that is brought by any man and attributed to himself and not to Allaah is definitely a false religion.

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:163

<sup>2</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:25

**Two:** That the religion should call to the worship of Allaah alone; should prohibit *Shirk* (polytheism of any form) and all that can lead to it. This is because; the call to the Oneness of Allaah is the primary mission of all Prophets and Messengers. Every Prophet told his people,

﴿ أَعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ مَا لَكُمْ مِنْ إِلَهٍ غَيْرُهُ ﴾

*Worship Allâh! You have no other Ilâh (God) but Him. (Lâ ilâha illallâh: none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh).<sup>1</sup>*

**Three:** It should be in agreement with the principles unto which all the Messengers call their people which are to worship Allaah alone and to avoid polytheism, unruliness to parents, killing of a person unjustly and all other immoral things, be they hidden or apparent. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ مِنْ رَسُولٍ إِلَّا نُوحِي إِلَيْهِ أَنَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنَا فَاعْبُدُونِ ﴾



*"And We did not send any Messenger before you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) but We revealed to him (saying): Lâ ilâha illa Ana (none has the right to be worshipped but I (Allâh)) so worship Me (Alone and none else).<sup>2</sup>*

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:73

<sup>2</sup> Al- 21:25

﴿ قُلْ تَعَالَوْا أَتْلُ مَا حَرَّمَ رَبِّيَ عَلَيْكُمْ أَلَّا تُشْرِكُوا بِهِ شَيْئًا ۚ وَبِالْوَالِدَيْنِ إِحْسَانًا ۚ وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا أَوْلَادَكُمْ أُولَٰئِكَ مِنْكُمْ ۚ إِنَّكُمْ أَنْتُمْ نَرُزِقُهُمْ ۚ وَإِيَّاهُمْ ۚ وَلَا تَقْرُبُوا أَلْفَوَاحِشَ مَا ظَهَرَ مِنْهَا وَمَا بَطَّنَ ۚ وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا النَّفْسَ الَّتِي حَرَّمَ اللَّهُ إِلَّا بِالْحَقِّ ۚ ذَٰلِكُمْ وَصَّيْنَاكُمْ بِهِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَعْقِلُونَ ﴿١٥﴾ ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "Come, I will recite what your Lord has prohibited you from: Join not anything in worship with Him; be good and dutiful to your parents; kill not your children because of poverty - We provide sustenance for you and for them; come not near to Al-Fawâhish (shameful sins, illegal sexual intercourse) whether committed openly or secretly; and kill not anyone whom Allâh has forbidden, except for a just cause (according to Islâmic law). This He has commanded you that you may understand."<sup>1</sup>

And He says,

﴿ وَسْئَلْ مَنْ أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ مِنْ رُسُلِنَا أَجَعَلْنَا مِنْ دُونِ الرَّحْمَنِ ءَالِهَةً يُعْبَدُونَ ﴾



"And ask (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) those of Our Messengers whom We sent before you: "Did We ever appoint âliha (gods) to be worshipped besides the Most Gracious (Allâh)?"<sup>2</sup>

**Four:** It should not be self-contradicting by commanding something and contradicting it by another. It should also not forbid something

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:151

<sup>2</sup> Az-Zukhruf 43:45

and then allow what is similar to it without any reason or prohibit something for some group and permit it for others. Allaah says,

﴿ أَفَلَا يَتَذَكَّرُونَ الْقُرْآنَ ۚ وَلَوْ كَانَ مِنْ عِنْدِ غَيْرِ اللَّهِ لَوَجَدُوا فِيهِ اخْتِلَافًا كَثِيرًا ﴾



"Do they not then consider the Qur'ân carefully? Had it been from other than Allâh, they would surely have found therein many a contradiction."<sup>1</sup>

**Five:** The religion should include what can preserve for people, their belief, honour, properties, lives and offspring through its commandments, prohibitions, deterrents and morals that it ordains to protect these five general factors.

**Six:** It should serve as a mercy for mankind and save them from their own injustices and the injustices they commit against one another through usurping others' rights and the general amenities or through misleading the weak at the hands of the strong. Allaah says while explaining the mercy that the Torah, which was given to Prophet Moses, entails,

﴿ وَلَمَّا سَكَتَ عَنْ مُوسَى الْغَضَبُ أَخَذَ الْأَلْوَابَ ۗ وَفِي نُسُخَتِهَا هُدًى وَرَحْمَةٌ لِلَّذِينَ

﴿ هُمْ لِرَبِّهِمْ يَرْهَبُونَ ﴾

"And when the anger of Mûsâ (Moses) was calmed down, he took up the Tablets; and in their inscription was guidance and mercy for those who fear their Lord."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:82

<sup>2</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:154

He also says informing us about the message of Jesus, peace be on him,

﴿ وَلَنَجْعَلَنَّ آيَةً لِلنَّاسِ وَرَحْمَةً مِنَّا ﴾

*"And (We wish) to appoint him as a sign to mankind and a mercy from Us."<sup>1</sup>*

He says about Prophet Saalih,

﴿ قَالَ يَنْقُومِ آرَاءُ يَتُمَّرَ إِنْ كُنْتُ عَلَىٰ بَيِّنَةٍ مِّن رَّبِّي وَءَاتَنِي مِنْهُ رَحْمَةً فَمَنْ يَنْصُرُنِي مِنَ اللَّهِ إِنْ عَصَيْتُهُ ﴾

*He said: "O my people! Tell me, if I have a clear proof from my Lord, and there has come to me a Mercy (Prophethood) from Him, who then can help me against Allâh, if I were to disobey Him?"<sup>2</sup>*

He says about the Qur'aan,

﴿ وَنُنزِّلُ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ مَا هُوَ شِفَاءٌ وَرَحْمَةٌ لِّلْمُؤْمِنِينَ ﴾

*"And We send down from the Qur'ân that which is a healing and a mercy to those who believe (in Islâmic Monotheism and act on it)."<sup>3</sup>*

**Seven:** It should entail guidance to the Law of Allaah, and teach man the intention of Allaah by that Law. It should also be able to tell man his origin and his final destination. Allaah says about the Torah,

<sup>1</sup> Maryam 19:21

<sup>2</sup> Hood 11:63

<sup>3</sup> Al-Israa 17:82

﴿ إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَا التَّوْرَةَ فِيهَا هُدًى وَنُورٌ ﴾

*"Verily, We did send down the Taurât (Torah) (to Mûsâ (Moses)), therein was guidance and light."<sup>1</sup>*

He says about the *Injeel* (the Book given to Jesus),

﴿ وَءَاتَيْنَاهُ الْإِنجِيلَ فِيهِ هُدًى وَنُورٌ ﴾

*"And We gave him the Injeel (Gospel), in which was guidance and light."<sup>2</sup>*

He says about the Qur'aan,

﴿ هُوَ الَّذِي أَرْسَلَ رَسُولَهُ بِالْهُدَىٰ وَدِينِ الْحَقِّ ﴾

*"It is He Who has sent His Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) with guidance and the religion of truth (Islâm)."<sup>3</sup>*

The true religion is the one that includes guidance to the Law of Allaah, gives peace and tranquillity to the mind, protect it from all insinuations, answers all its questions and resolves every problem.

**Eight:** It should call to noble characters and deeds like truthfulness, honesty, modesty, chastity and generosity. It should also prohibit bad conducts like disobedience to parents, killing innocent souls, all kinds of immoralities, lies, injustice, aggression, stinginess and sins.

<sup>1</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:44

<sup>2</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:46

<sup>3</sup> At-Tawbah 9:33

**Nine:** It should be able to provide happiness for those who believe in it. Allaah says,

﴿ طه ﴿١﴾ مَا أَنْزَلْنَا عَلَيْكَ الْقُرْآنَ لِتَشْقَى ﴿٢﴾ ﴾

*"Tâ-Hâ. We have not sent down the Qur'ân unto you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) to cause you distress."*<sup>1</sup>

It should also be in harmony with upright nature. Allaah says,

*"That (Islaamic Monotheism) is the nature upon which Allaah has created mankind."*<sup>2</sup>

It should also be in harmony with sound reason, because Allaah ordains the true religion and creates the sound reason as well. It is therefore impossible that the Law of Allaah and the creature of Allaah should contradict each other.

**Ten:** It should lead to the truth, warn against falsehood, keep people away from error and lead them to the Straight Path where there is no crookedness. Allaah speaks about the jinn that when they heard the Qur'aan being recited, some of them told others,

﴿ قَالُوا يَنْقُومَنَا إِنَّا سَمِعْنَا كِتَابًا أُنزِلَ مِنْ بَعْدِ مُوسَىٰ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ ﴿١﴾ يَهْدِي إِلَى الْحَقِّ وَإِلَىٰ طَرِيقٍ مُسْتَقِيمٍ ﴿٢﴾ ﴾

*"They said: "O our people! Verily, we have heard a Book (this Qur'ân) sent down after Mûsa (Moses), confirming what came before it: it guides to the truth and to a Straight Path (i.e. Islâm)."*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Taa Haa 20:1-2

<sup>2</sup> Ar-Room 30:30



It should not call to what will bring misery upon people, as Allaah says about the Qur'aan,

﴿ طه ﴿١﴾ مَا أَنْزَلْنَا عَلَيْكَ الْقُرْءَانَ لِتَشْقَىٰ ﴿٢﴾ ﴾

"Tâ-Hâ. We have not sent down the Qur'ân unto you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) to cause you distress."<sup>2</sup>

The true religion should not enjoin on people what can cause them destruction. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ بِكُمْ رَحِيمًا ﴿٣١﴾ ﴾

"And do not kill yourselves (nor kill one another). Surely, Allâh is Most Merciful to you."<sup>3</sup>

It should not distinguish between its adherents on the basis of race, colour or clan. Allaah says,

﴿ يٰٓأَيُّهَا النَّاسُ ۖ إِنَّا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ مِنْ ذَكَرٍ وَأُنْثَىٰ وَجَعَلْنَاكُمْ شُعُوبًا وَقَبَائِلَ لِتَعَارَفُوا ۗ إِنَّ أَكْرَمَكُمْ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ أَتْقَىٰكُمْ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلِيمٌ خَبِيرٌ ﴿١٠٩﴾ ﴾

"O mankind! We have created you from a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that you may know one another. Verily, the most honorable of you with Allâh is that (believer) who

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ahqaaf 46:30

<sup>2</sup> Taa Haa 20:1-2

<sup>3</sup> An-Nisaa 4:29

*has At-Taqwâ (i.e. he is one of the Muttaqûn (the pious. See V.2:2). Verily, Allâh is All-Knowing, All-Aware.”<sup>1</sup>*

Therefore, the recognised criterion for giving people precedence in the true religion is piety.

After mentioning the criteria for distinguishing between the true religion and the false ones and citing evidences from the Qur'aan that these Criteria are general in the case of all truthful Messengers sent by Allaah, it is then very appropriate to mention types of religion.

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hujuraat 49:13

## Types of Religions

Mankind are divided as far as their faiths are concerned into two categories:

**There are a people who have a Book that was revealed to them like the Jews, the Christians and the Muslims.** As for the Jews and the Christians, the Books that were revealed to their Prophets have been lost as a result of their ignorance of what was in their Books; their taking of men as gods beside Allaah and the long time that had passed between them and their acquaintance with these Books. So their priests wrote some books, which they claimed to be from Allaah while they were not from Allaah but only wrong assumptions of liars and distortion of fanatics.

As for the Book of the Muslims (the Noble Qur'aan), it is the last Divine Book to be revealed and the strongest and firmest. Allaah Himself guaranteed its preservation and did not delegate that to mankind. He says,

﴿ إِنَّا نَحْنُ نَزَّلْنَا الذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُونَ ﴾

*"Verily We, it is We Who have sent down the Dhikr (i.e. the Qur'aan) and surely, We will guard it (from corruption)."*<sup>1</sup>

The Qur'aan is therefore preserved in the people's hearts and in the Book, for it is the last Book, which Allaah has guaranteed for the guidance of mankind. He has made it a proof against them till the Last Hour and has decreed its perpetuity. He provides for it in every age those who will observe its limits and words, act by its law and believe in it. Further explanations about this Book will be given in a later section.

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hijr 15:9.

**There is another section of religious adherents who have no revealed Book from Allaah**, even though they possess an inherited book, which is attributed to the founder of the religion like Hindus, Magians, Buddhists, Confucians and Arabs before the advent of Muhammad.

There is not a nation that does not have some knowledge and carry out some activities by which their worldly interests are achieved. This is the general knowledge which Allaah endowed every human being, even animals; for the animal is also guided as to how to attain what benefits it like food and drink and to avert what harms it; and Allaah has created in it the love for the former and aversion for the latter. He says,

﴿ سَبِّحْ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى ۚ الَّذِي خَلَقَ فَسَوَّى ۙ وَالَّذِي قَدَّرَ فَهَدَى ۙ ﴾

*"Glorify the Name of your Lord, the Most High, Who has created (everything), and then proportioned it. And Who has measured (preordainments for everything even to be blessed or wretched); then guided (i.e. showed mankind the right as well as the wrong paths, and guided the animals to pasture)."*<sup>1</sup>

He also says, informing us of what Prophet Moosaa (Moses) told Pharaoh,

﴿ رَبُّنَا الَّذِي أَعْطَى كُلَّ شَيْءٍ خَلْقَهُ ثُمَّ هَدَى ۙ ﴾

*"Our Lord is He Who gave to each things its form and nature, then guided it aright."*<sup>2</sup>

Allaah also informs us about Prophet Ibraaheem (Abraham) that he said of His Lord,

<sup>1</sup> Al-A'laa 87:1-3.

<sup>2</sup> Taa Haa 20:50.

﴿ الَّذِي خَلَقَنِي فَهُوَ يَهْدِينِ ﴾

*"Who has created me and it is He Who guides me."*<sup>1</sup>

It is known to every sane person – who has the least reflection and sense of thinking – that adherents of religions are better in useful sciences and righteous deeds than those with no religion. There is therefore, no good thing found with non-Muslims among adherents of other religions except that the Muslims possess what is better and more perfect, so the adherents of religions possess what others do not possess. For sciences and deeds are two types:

**First:** That which is achieved through intelligence and reason like astronomy, medical sciences and vocations. Though adherents of religions and atheists are equal in possession of these things; the adherents of religions are better in them. As for those things that cannot be known through mere reason like theology and religious sciences, these are prerogatives of the followers of religions. There are among this kind of knowledge that which logical evidences can prove. It is the Messengers who guided men unto how logical evidences proof that; which is both logical and legal.

**Second:** Things that cannot be known except through the information given by the Messengers. This kind of knowledge and deeds cannot be achieved through human reason, like knowledge about Allaah, His Names and Attributes, the bliss that is in the Hereafter for whoever obeys Allaah and the punishment for those who disobey Him, the explanations on His injunctions and the information about the past Prophets and their peoples and so on.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ash-Shuaraa 26:78, See: Al-Jawaab As-Saheeh 4, Page 97.

<sup>2</sup> See Majmoo' Fataawaa Shaikhul Islaam 4 p. 210-211.

## **Conditions of the existing religions**

Great religions, their old books and ancient laws have become easy preys to frivolous and fraudulent people, an object of mockery for distorters and hypocrites and targets of bloody incidences and great calamities so much so that they have lost their spirit and shape. If their first adherents and prophets were to be resurrected now, they would surely have denied them and proclaimed to be ignorant of them.

Judaism\* – today – has become a set of rituals and traditions with no spirit or life. Apart from this, it is an racial religion peculiar to a particular race and carries no message for the world, nor any mission for the people or any mercy for mankind.

This religion has been afflicted in its fundamental creed, which is its motto among other religions and nations. And it has been a noble religion while it was the religion of monotheism, which Prophets Ibraaheem (Abraham) and Ya'qoob (Jacob) commanded their children to follow. The Jews had adopted many concepts from the beliefs of corrupt nations with whom they shared neighbourhood or under whose authority they had been subjected. They had also adopted a lot of pagan customs and traditions of these people. Unbiased Jewish historians have confirmed this. In Jewish Encyclopaedia, we can read in it what approximately means,

"The prophets' wrath over the worship of images does indicate that worshipping idols and false deities had crept into the hearts of the Israelites and that they had embraced the polytheistic and

---

\* For further reading, see the book, "Ifhaam al-Yahood" by Samuel bin Yahya Al-Maghrabi. He was a Jew who reverted to Islaam.

superstitious beliefs. The Talmud also testifies to the fact that paganism has a particular attraction for the Jews."<sup>1</sup>

The Babel Talmud<sup>2</sup> – which the Jews extremely hallow and prefer to the Torah, was widely circulated among the Jews of the Sixth Century, and which contains a lot of strange manifestations of their simple-mindedness, absurd sayings, insolent behaviour towards Allaah, scorning the reality and gambling with religion and human intellect – shows the extent to which the Jewish community of this age has degenerated intellectually and religiously.<sup>3</sup>

As for Christianity, it is also afflicted since its earliest days with distortions of extremists, alterations of the ignorant and paganism of the Romans who claimed to be Christians.<sup>4</sup>

All these distortions, alterations and paganism have become the heap under which all great teachings of Christ were buried and the light of Monotheism and sincere worship of Allah were hidden behind these clouds.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Jewish Encyclopedia Vol. XLL. P 568-569

<sup>2</sup> The word '*Talmud*' means, 'Jewish book of religious and moral teachings'. It is a compilation of footnotes and commentaries on their book '*Mishna*' which means, 'the law' according to Jewish scholars of different generations.

<sup>3</sup> Read for information, "Al-Yahood alaa Hasab al-Talmud", by Dr. Rohlange and its translation from French to Arabic in "Al-kanzul marsood fee qawaa'idit-talmoodee" by Yoosuf Hanna Nasrullaah.

<sup>4</sup> For details, read, "Al-jawaab as-Saheeh liman baddala deenal-maseeh" by Shaykhul Islaam Ibn Taymiyyah; "Izhaar al-Haqq" by Rahmatullaah Al-Hindee and "Tuhfatul-Areeb fee radd 'alaa ubbaad As-Saleeb", by Abdullah At-Turjumaan who was a Christian revert.

<sup>4</sup> See "The Struggle between Religion and Science", (p.40-41) by the well-known European author Draper ( Note: The translator does not know the actual name of this book in its original language nor the correct spelling of the name of its author because both were translated and transliterated respectively from Arabic).

A Christian writer speaks about the extent, to which the trinity had gone in the Christian society since the end of the Fourth Century after Christ,

"The belief that one God consists of three different godheads had penetrated into the inner life of the Christian world and its thoughts since the last quarter of the fourth century and had become the official recognised creed in all parts of the Christendom ever since. Also, the development of Trinity and its secret were not revealed until in the last half of the nineteenth century A.D."<sup>1</sup>

A contemporary Christian historian<sup>2</sup> discusses in a book, "History of Christianity in the Light of Modern Science", about the appearance of paganism in the Christian society in different forms and shapes and the Christians' diversity in adopting religious rites, customs and pagan heroes of nations and religions that are ancient in idolatry under the pretext of imitation, admiration or ignorance. He said,

"Paganism has ended but has not been completely eliminated. Rather, it has penetrated the hearts and everything in it has been tolerantly allowed to continue in the name of Christianity and under its cover. Those who abandoned their gods and heroes took one of their martyrs and gave him the title of their former gods then erected a statue in his name. This is how polytheism and idol worship are transferred unto these local martyrs. By the end of that century, worshipping of the martyrs and saints spread all over the Christendom and formed a new creed that teaches that saints have divine attributes. These saints and hallowed men were thus made intermediaries between God and man and pagan festivals were given new names until the ancient pagan Sun festival was turned to Christmas in the year 400 A.C."

---

<sup>1</sup> See New Catholic Encyclopaedia, The Holy trinity Vol. 14 P. 295.

<sup>2</sup> Rev James Houston Baxter, History of Christianity in the Light of Modern Knowledge", Glasgow 1929 p. 407.



As for the Magians, they have been known since time of old to be worshippers of natural elements, the greatest of which is fire. They have lately adhered to its worship and built for it alters and temples so much so that fire houses have become widespread in all places in their country and all other religions and faiths disappear except fire worship and hallowing of the sun. The religion, according to these people has become mere rites and traditions that are practised in special places.<sup>1</sup>

The Danish author who wrote the book, "Iran during the reign of Sasanids", describes their religious leaders and their functions, "These functionaries must worship fire four times in a day. In addition to this, they also worshipped moon, fire and water. They had an order that they should not let the fire die out or let the fire and water meet each other or let the metal rust, because they also hallow the metal."<sup>2</sup>

These Magians have practised dualism all the time and that has become their motto. They believed in two gods; god of light or god of good which they called "*ahur mazda*" or "*Yazdan*" and the other god is god of darkness or evil, and this they called: "*ahur man*". The war and conflict are continuously going between both of them.<sup>3</sup>

As regards Buddhism, the religion that is widespread in India and Middle Asia, it is a paganism whereof its adherents carry with them idols wherever they go. They build temples for these idols and erect the statue of "Buddha" wherever they go and settle.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Read the book, "Iran during the reign of Sasanids" by Professor of Eastern Languages at Copenhagen University, Denmark, and a specialist on the history of Iran. See also, "History of Iran" by the Magian, Shaeen Makareus.

<sup>2</sup> Iran during the reign of Sasanids, p. 155

<sup>3</sup> Iran during the reign of Sasanids. p. 183-233.

<sup>4</sup> See "The Ancient India", by Aishura Toba, a professor of Hindu Civilization at the University of Haydrabad; and "The Discovery of

As for Brahmanism the religion of India, it has been popular with a lot of deities. Their paganism had reached its peak in the sixth century A.C. when the number of their deities reached 330 million gods.<sup>1</sup> Everything according to Brahmanism has become wonderful and everything has become useful and a deity to be worshipped. During that age, the art of idol making became highly profitable and many idol stylists carved so many idols in different shapes.

The Hindi writer, C. V. Vidya, wrote in his book, "The History of Medieval Hindu" while discussing the era of King Harash (606-648 A.D.), which is the era that follows the advent of Islaam in Arabia,

"Hinduism and Buddhism are equally pagan religion though Buddhism might have surpassed Hinduism in paganism. The origin of Buddhism was denial of existence of any Lord but it gradually adopted Buddha (its founder) as the greatest deity. It later on added other deities like Bodhistavas. Paganism has reached its peak in India so much so that the name Buddha became synonymous with idol or statue in some eastern languages." It is without doubt that Paganism has become widespread in the contemporary world. The whole world from the Atlantic sea to the Pacific ocean is greatly immersed in Paganism. The matter becomes as if the Christianity, the Semitic religions and Buddhism are competing in glorification and hallowing of idols like racing horses.<sup>2</sup>

Another Hindu said in his book, "The Prevailing Hinduism", that the art of making idols had not ended yet, but small idols continued to join the existing 'deities complex' in great numbers throughout

---

India" by Jawahar Lal Nehru, the former Indian Prime Minister. p. 201-202.

<sup>1</sup> See "Ancient India" by R. Dit, 3/287; and "The Prevailing Hinduism", by L.S.S.O. Malley p. 6-7.

<sup>2</sup> C.V. Vidya: History of Medieval Hindu. Vol. I (Poone 1921)

different historical periods that they have become an innumerable and an uncountable thong of deities.<sup>1</sup>

This is the condition of the world religions. As for civilized countries where great governments were established, where many sciences flourished and which were the bedrock of civilization, industry and arts, they have become countries with no religions; countries that had lost their origin and power, in which there are no righteous reformers and teachers, where atheism is publicly proclaimed, corruption of all kind proliferated, all standards have been changed and the man has become valueless to his own self. That is why there are many cases of suicide, severance of family ties, disruption of social relations, increase in the number of patients who visit psychologists' clinics and establishment of the market of magic tricksters.

In these so-called civilized nations, man tries out every enjoyable thing and follows every invented and innovated creed, seeking to satiate the demand of his soul, to make himself happy and give himself peace of mind. But all these enjoyments, and all these creeds and theories failed to achieve these goals for him, and he shall continue in this psychological misery and spiritual torment until he establishes relationship with his Creator and worships Him according to the way He is pleased with and with which He sent His Messengers. Allaah says, while describing the condition of the one who turns away from his Lord and seeks for guidance from others besides Him,

﴿ وَمَنْ أَعْرَضَ عَن ذِكْرِي فَإِنَّ لَهُ مَعِيشَةً ضَنْكًا وَنَحْشُرُهُ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ أَعْمَى ﴾



*“But whosoever turns away from My Reminder (i.e., neither believes in this Qur’ân nor acts on its teachings). Verily, for him is a*

<sup>1</sup> See “As-Seeratun-nabawiyah” by Abil Hasan An-Nadwi p. 19-28.

*life of hardship and We shall raise him up blind on the Day of Resurrection.*"<sup>1</sup>

Allaah, may He be glorified, also informs us about the life of the true believers and their happiness in this worldly life when He says,

﴿ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَلَمْ يَلْبِسُوا إِيمَانَهُمْ بِظُلْمٍ أُولَٰئِكَ لَهُمُ الْأَمْنُ وَهُمْ مُهْتَدُونَ ﴿١٧٧﴾ ﴾

*"It is those who believe (in the Oneness of Allâh and worship none but Him Alone) and confuse not their belief with Zulm (wrong i.e. by worshipping others besides Allâh), for them (only) there is security and they are the guided."*<sup>2</sup>

He, Whose praise is great also says,

﴿ وَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ سُعِدُوا فَفِي الْجَنَّةِ خَالِدِينَ فِيهَا مَا دَامَتِ السَّمٰوٰتُ وَالْاَرْضُ اِلَّا مَا شَاءَ رَبُّكَ عَطَاءٌ غَيْرٌ مَّجْدُوذٍ ﴿١٧٨﴾ ﴾

*"As for those who are blessed, they will be in Paradise, abiding therein for all the time that the heavens and the earth endure, except as your Lord wills; a gift without an end."*<sup>3</sup>

If we apply the criteria of the true religion to all these religions – except Islaam, we will see that they are short of all these criteria as it is clear from the above exposition.

The greatest element, which all these `religions are short of, is Monotheism. For their adherents have associated other gods with Allaah in worship in addition to the fact that these religions do not

<sup>1</sup> Taa Haa 20:124.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:82

<sup>3</sup> Hood 11:108.

provide people with a law that can be applicable in all places and at all times and that can protect them, their lives, faith, honour, offspring and properties. These religions also do not guide people to the Law of Allaah which He orders to be followed neither do they give their adherents peace of mind and happiness, as a result of their inherent contradictions.

As regards Islaam, you will come to know in the following chapters that it is the true religion of Allaah which He is pleased with and which He has chosen for mankind as their religion.

At the end of this section, it is appropriate that we define the essence of prophethood and the need of mankind for it; and explain the foundations of the mission of the Messengers and the reality of the last and everlasting message of Islaam.

## **The essence of Prophethood**

The greatest thing that man must know in this life is the knowledge about his Lord, Who created him from nothing and showered him with blessings. And the greatest purpose for which Allaah created the creation is to worship Him alone.

But how can man know his Lord as it is due? What are the duties and obligations binding on him? How can he worship his Lord? Man can find who will assist him during vicissitudes of life, provide for his needs like treatment for an ailment, giving some medicine, assisting to build a house and so on and so forth; but he cannot find among ordinary people who can make him know his Lord and explain to him how to worship Him. This is because human intelligence cannot independently know what Allaah intends, he cannot even perceive the intention of his fellow human being before he tells him what he intends. How can he then know what Allaah means? Further, it is also because, this matter is only restricted to the Messengers and Prophets whom Allaah has chosen to convey the Message and to those who come after them among the rightly guided leaders and the heirs of the Prophet, who follow their way, take to their Path and help to convey their message. This is because; human beings cannot receive revelation directly from Allaah as its bearing is beyond their ability. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَا كَانَ لِبَشَرٍ أَنْ يُكَلِّمَهُ اللَّهُ إِلَّا وَحْيًا أَوْ مِنْ وَرَائِ حِجَابٍ أَوْ يُرْسِلَ رَسُولًا  
فَيُوحِيَ بِإِذْنِهِ مَا يَشَاءُ إِنَّهُ عَلَىٰ حَكِيمٍ مُّبِينٍ ﴾

*"It is not given to any human being that Allâh should speak to him unless (it be) by Revelation, or from behind a veil, or (that) He*

*sends a Messenger to reveal what He wills by His Leave. Verily, He is Most High, Most Wise.*"<sup>1</sup>

There should therefore be an intermediary and an envoy who can convey the law of Allaah to His slaves, Those intermediaries and envoys are the Messengers and Prophets. The angel will carry the message to the Prophet and the Prophet will convey it to the people. The Angels do not carry the message to men directly, for the world of angels is naturally different from that of human beings. Allaah says,

﴿ اللَّهُ يَصْطَفِي مِنَ الْمَلَائِكَةِ رُسُلًا وَمِنَ النَّاسِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ سَمِيعٌ بَصِيرٌ ﴾



*"Allāh chooses Messengers from angels and from men."*<sup>2</sup>

The Wisdom of Allaah necessitates that the Messenger should come from the race of those whom he is sent to, so that they could understand him because of their ability to speak with him. If Messengers had been sent to mankind from among the angels, they could not have been able to face him or learn anything from him. Allaah the exalted says,

﴿ وَقَالُوا لَوْلَا أُنزِلَ عَلَيْهِ مَلَكٌ وَلَوْ أَنْزَلْنَا مَلَكَ لَقُضِيَ الْأَمْرُ ثُمَّ لَا يُنظَرُونَ ﴿٥١﴾ وَلَوْ جَعَلْنَاهُ مَلَكَ لَجَعَلْنَاهُ رَجُلًا وَلَلَبَسْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ مَا يَلْبَسُونَ ﴿٥٢﴾ ﴾

*"And they say: "Why has not an angel been sent down to him?" Had We sent down an angel, the matter would have been judged at once, and no respite would be granted to them. And had We*

<sup>1</sup> Ash-Shooraa 42:51.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Hajj 22:75.

appointed him an angel, We indeed would have made him a man, and We would have certainly confused them in which they are already confused (i.e. the Message of Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him)).”<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا قَبْلَكَ مِنَ الْمُرْسَلِينَ إِلَّا إِنَّهُمْ لَيَأْكُلُونَ الطَّعَامَ وَيَمْشُونَ فِي الْأَسْوَاقِ ۗ وَجَعَلْنَا بَعْضَكُمْ لِبَعْضٍ فِتْنَةً أَتَصْبِرُونَ ۗ وَكَانَ رَبُّكَ بَصِيرًا ﴿٢٠﴾ ﴿ وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ لَا يَرْجُونَ لِقَاءَنَا لَوْلَا أُنزِلَ عَلَيْنَا الْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ أَوْ نَرَىٰ رَبَّنَا لَقَدِ اسْتَكْبَرُوا فِي أَنفُسِهِمْ وَعَتَوْا عُتُوًا كَبِيرًا ﴿٢١﴾ ﴾

"And We never sent before you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) any of the Messengers but verily, they ate food and walked in the markets. And We have made some of you as a trial for others: will you have patience? And your Lord is Ever All-Seer (of everything). And those who expect not a Meeting with Us (i.e. those who deny the Day of Resurrection and the life of the Hereafter), said: "Why are not the angels sent down to us, or why do we not see our Lord?" Indeed they think too highly of themselves, and are scornful with great pride."<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ إِلَّا رِجَالًا نُوْحِي إِلَيْهِمْ ۗ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:8-9.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Furqaan 25:20-21.



"And We sent not (as Our Messengers) before you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) any but men, whom We inspired, (to preach and invite mankind to believe in the Oneness of Allâh)."<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ رَّسُولٍ إِلَّا بِلِسَانِ قَوْمِهِ لِيُبَيِّنَ لَهُمْ فَيُضِلُّ اللَّهُ مَنْ يَشَاءُ وَيَهْدِي مَنْ يَشَاءُ وَهُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ ﴾

"And We sent not a Messenger except with the language of his people, in order that he might make the Message clear to them."<sup>2</sup>

These Messengers and Prophets possessed complete and perfect reason, sound nature, truthfulness in words and deeds, and sincerity in conveying what was put in their trust. They also possessed Divine immunity from all that could tarnish human conduct and physical appearances that are free from all things that are repugnant to sights and repulsive to sound human taste.<sup>3</sup> Allaah purified them in their persons and manners. They are the most perfect in manners, purest in souls and most generous. Allaah combined in them good manners and excellent conduct as He combined in them deliberateness, knowledge, magnanimity, generosity, bravery and justice. By these qualities, they were distinguished among their peoples. The people of Prophet Saalih told him as Allaah informs us in His Book,

﴿ قَالُوا يَنْصَلِحُ قَدْ كُنْتَ فِيمَا مَرَجُوا قَبْلَ هَذَا أَتَنْهِنَّا أَنْ نَعْبُدَ مَا يَعْبُدُ آبَاؤُنَا ﴾

<sup>1</sup> An-Nahl 16:43.

<sup>2</sup> Ibraaheem 14:4.

<sup>3</sup> See: Lawaami'ul anwaar al bahiyyah Vol. 2 pp. 265 and, "Al-Islaam" by Ahmad Shalabee p. 114.

"They said: "O Sâlih! You have been among us as a figure of good hope (and we wished for you to be our chief) till this (new thing which you have brought that we leave our gods and worship your God (Allâh) Alone)! Do you (now) forbid us the worship of what our fathers have worshipped?"<sup>1</sup>

He also informs us of what the people of Prophet Shu'aib told him,

﴿ قَالُوا يَشْعِيبُ أَصَلُّوْتَكَ تَأْمُرُكَ أَنْ نَتْرَكَ مَا يَعْبُدُ ءَابَاؤُنَا أَوْ أَنْ نَفْعَلَ فِي أَمْوَالِنَا مَا نَشْتَوُا إِنَّكَ لَأَنْتَ الْحَلِيمُ الرَّشِيدُ ﴾

"They said: "O Shu'aib! Does your Salât (prayer) command that we give up what our fathers used to worship, or that we give up doing what we like with our property? Verily, you are the forbearer, right-minded!" (They said this sarcastically).<sup>2</sup>

The Messenger of Allaah, Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, was also popular among his people with the title "Al-Ameen" (the trustworthy) even before he received the revelation, His Lord describes him saying,

﴿ وَإِنَّكَ لَعَلَىٰ خُلُقٍ عَظِيمٍ ﴾

"And verily, you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) are on an exalted standard of character."<sup>3</sup>

The Messengers and Prophets are therefore, the best ones among Allaah's creatures. He selected them and chose them to carry His Message and convey it to mankind, and,

<sup>1</sup> Hood 11:62.

<sup>2</sup> Hood 11:87.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Qalam 68:4.

﴿ اللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ حَيْثُ يَجْعَلُ رِسَالَتَهُ ﴾

"Allâh knows best with whom to place His Message."<sup>1</sup>

Allaah says,

﴿ إِنَّ اللَّهَ اصْطَفَىٰ آدَمَ وَنُوحًا وَآلَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَآلَ عِمْرَانَ عَلَى الْعَالَمِينَ ﴾

"Allâh chose Adam, Nûh (Noah), the family of Ibrâhim (Abraham) and the family of 'Imrân above the 'Alamîn (mankind and jinn) (of their times)."<sup>2</sup>

These Messengers and Prophets – in spite of lofty qualities with which Allaah described them and the excellent conducts for which they were known – are nevertheless humans who suffered what other humans suffer; they suffered hunger and sickness; they slept, ate, married and died. Allaah says, addressing Prophet Muhammad,

﴿ إِنَّكَ مَيِّتٌ وَإِنَّهُمْ مَيِّتُونَ ﴾

"Verily, you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) will die and verily, they (too) will die."<sup>3</sup>

Allaah also says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا رُسُلًا مِّن قَبْلِكَ وَجَعَلْنَا لَهُمُ أَزْوَاجًا وَذُرِّيَّةً ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:124

<sup>2</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:33.

<sup>3</sup> Az-Zumar 39:30.

*"And indeed, We sent Messengers before you (O Muhammad) and made for them wives and offspring."<sup>1</sup>*

They were even subjected to persecution; many of them were killed or expelled from their homes. Allaah says addressing Prophet Muhammad,

﴿ وَإِذْ يَمْكُرُ بِكَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لِيُثْبِتُوكَ أَوْ يَقْتُلُوكَ أَوْ يُخْرِجُوكَ وَيَمْكُرُونَ وَيَمْكُرُ اللَّهُ ۗ وَاللَّهُ خَيْرُ الْمَكْرِينَ ﴿٣٠﴾ ﴾

*"And (remember) when the disbelievers plotted against you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) to imprison you, or to kill you, or to get you out (from your home, i.e. Makkah); they were plotting and Allâh too was plotting; and Allâh is the Best of those who plot."<sup>2</sup>*

But to them were the end, victory and authority in this worldly life and the Hereafter. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَيَنْصُرَنَّ اللَّهُ مَن يَنْصُرُهُ ﴾

*"Allâh will help those who help His (cause)."<sup>3</sup>*

He also says,

﴿ كَتَبَ اللَّهُ لَأَغْلِبَنَّ أَنَا وَرُسُلِي ۗ إِنَّ اللَّهَ قَوِيٌّ عَزِيزٌ ﴿٢٥٠﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Ra'd 13:38.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Anfaal 8:30.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Hajj 22:40.

*"Allâh has decreed: "Verily! It is I and My Messengers who shall be the victorious." Verily, Allâh is All-Powerful, All-Mighty."*<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Mujaadilah 58:21.

## Signs of Prophethood

Since Prophethood is a means by which the noblest of all knowledge can be acquired and the greatest and most honourable deeds can be carried out; it is of Allaah's mercy to give these Prophets the signs by which they could be known and through which they could be identified, though, every one of those who claimed to have a mission has some signs and conditions that could indicate his truthfulness if he is truthful or otherwise if he is a liar. These signs are many, the most important of which are:

1. The Messenger should call to the worship of Allaah alone and to the abandonment of worshipping others besides Him. For this is the purpose for which Allaah created the creation.
2. The Messenger should call people to believe in him, and put his message into practice. Allaah commands His Messenger, Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, to say,

﴿ قُلْ يَتَأْتِيهَا النَّاسُ إِنِّي رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِلَيْكُمْ جَمِيعًا ﴾

*"O mankind! Verily, I am sent to you all as the Messenger of Allāh."*<sup>1</sup>

3. He must be supported by Allaah with various signs of prophethood. Among these signs are the verses that the Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, brought from Allaah and which his people could not repudiate or produce its like. Another example is the sign of Prophet Moosaa when his rod turned to a snake; the sign of Prophet Eesaa (Jesus) who healed the blind and the leper by the permission of Allaah, and the sign of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, which is the Great

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:158.

Qur'aan, in spite of the fact that he was an illiterate who could neither read nor write among many other signs of the Prophets.

Among these signs is the clear and vivid truth which the Prophets and Messengers brought and which their opponents could not disprove or deny. Rather, their opponents knew that what the Prophets had brought was the truth that could not be resisted.

Among the signs also are perfect conditions, beautiful traits and magnanimous conduct with which Allaah distinguished the Prophets.

4. His message should agree in principles with the fundamentals to which all Messengers and Prophets called.<sup>1</sup>

5. He should not call others to the worship of himself or to direct any act of worship to him. He should also not call to the glorification of his tribe or clan. Allaah commands His Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, to tell people,

﴿ قُلْ لَا أَقُولُ لَكُمْ عِنْدِي خَزَائِنُ اللَّهِ وَلَا أَعْلَمُ الْغَيْبَ وَلَا أَقُولُ لَكُمْ إِنِّي مَلَكٌ إِن  
أَتَّبِعُ إِلَّا مَا يُوحَىٰ إِلَيَّ ﴾

*"Say: I do not tell you that with me is the treasure of Allâh, nor (that) I know the Unseen; nor I tell you that I am an angel. I but follow what is revealed to me."*<sup>2</sup>

6. He should not ask from people any of the things of this world as a wage for his mission. Allaah says, informing us about His Prophets Noah, Hood, Saalih, Loot and Shu'aib, that they told their people,

<sup>1</sup> See: Majmoo' Fataawa Ibn Taymiyyah Vol. 4 p. 212-213.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:50.

﴿ وَمَا أَسْأَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ أَجْرٍ ۗ إِنْ أَجْرِيَ إِلَّا عَلَىٰ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿١٨٦﴾ ﴾

"No reward do I ask of you for it (my Message of Islâmic Monotheism); my reward is only from the Lord of the 'Alamîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists)."<sup>1</sup>

Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, also told his people,

﴿ قُلْ مَا أَسْأَلُكُمْ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ أَجْرٍ ۖ وَمَا أَنَا مِنَ الْمُتَكَلِّفِينَ ﴿١٨٧﴾ ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "No wage do I ask of you for this (the Qur'ân), nor am I one of the Mutakallifûn (those who pretend and fabricate things which do not exist)."<sup>2</sup>

These Prophets and Messengers whom I have told you something of their qualities and signs of their prophethood, are many. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ بَعَثْنَا فِي كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ رَسُولًا أَنِ اعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ وَاجْتَنِبُوا الطَّاغُوتَ ۗ فَمِنْهُمْ مَن هَدَىٰ اللَّهُ وَمِنْهُمْ مَن حَقَّتْ عَلَيْهِ الضَّلَالَةُ ۚ فَسِيرُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ فَانظُرُوا كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ الْمُكَذِّبِينَ ﴿٢٠٥﴾ ﴾

"And verily, We have sent among every Ummah (community, nation) a Messenger (proclaiming): "Worship Allâh (Alone), and

<sup>1</sup> Ash-Shu'araa 26:109, 127, 145, 164, 180.

<sup>2</sup> Saad 38:86.



*avoid (or keep away from) Tâghût (all false deities, etc. i.e. do not worship Tâghût besides Allâh).<sup>1</sup>*

These Messengers have made mankind happy; the history recorded their stories and the injunctions of their religion were repeatedly transmitted, that they are the truth and just. Likewise, repeatedly narrated is the victory with which Allaah honoured them and destruction of their enemies, like the destruction of the people of Noah with flood, drowning of Pharaoh, punishment for the people of Loot; and the victory of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, over his enemies and the spread of his religion. Whoever knows this will know certainly that they brought for mankind good and guidance; that they directed them to all that could benefit them and warn them against all that could be harmful. The first of them is Adam and the last is Muhammad, peace be upon them all.

---

<sup>1</sup> An-Nahl 16:36.

## **Mankind's need for the Messengers**

The Prophets are Allaah's Messengers to His slaves; they convey His commandments to them, they give them glad tidings of the bliss which Allaah has prepared for them if they obey His Commandments, warn them of the everlasting punishment if they disobey Him and tell them the stories of the past nations and what befell them of the punishment and torment in this world because they disobeyed the commandments of their Lord.

These Divine Commandments and prohibitions cannot be known independently by human reasoning, that is why Allaah ordained and prescribed commandments and prohibitions as a honour for mankind and to protect his interests. For people tend to obey their desires, thereby violating forbidden things, attacking other people and usurping their rights. It is therefore out of the utmost wisdom too that Allaah should send Messengers among mankind, every now and then, who would remind them of the commandments of Allaah, warn them against disobedience, recite to them admonitions and tell them the stories of past generations. Because, when wonderful stories are heard and marvellous concepts awaken the psyche, the sense of reason embraces that, increases in knowledge and has right perception. The more man listens the more he thinks; the more he thinks the more he reflects; the more he reflects the more he understands and the more he understands the more he acts. So, sending Messengers is inevitable and there is no alternative for them if the truth is to be established.<sup>1</sup>

Shaykhul Islaam Ibn Taymiyyah<sup>2</sup> said, "Divine Message is necessary for reformation of man in his worldly life and his final abode. As there will not be well-being for him in his Hereafter if he

---

<sup>1</sup> A'laam An-Nubuwwa by 'Alee bin Muhammad Al-Mawardee p. 33.

<sup>2</sup> He is Ahmad bin Abdul-Haleem, popularly known as Ibn Taymiyyah. He was born in the year 661 A.H. and died in the year 728 A.H. He was one of the great Islaamic Scholars and the author of many valuable books.

does not follow the message, there will also not be well-being for him in his worldly life if he does not follow the Message. He is therefore, bound to follow the Law of Allaah for he lives between two movement: a movement by which he seeks what benefits him and another by which he wards off what harms him. The Law of Allaah is then the light that shows him what can benefit or harm him. That is the Light of Allaah on the earth, His justice between His slaves and His fortress which provides safety for whoever enters it. What is meant by the Law of Allaah is not physical distinction between the harmful and useful; for even the animals can do that. The donkey or camel can differentiate between barley and sand. What that means is to be able to distinguish between deeds that can harm their doer in his worldly life and his Hereafter and deeds that can benefit him in his worldly life and his Hereafter. Like the benefit of faith, belief in the Oneness of Allaah, justice, righteousness, kindness, honesty, chastity, courage, knowledge, perseverance, enjoining all that is good, forbidding all that is evil, being kind to the kith and kin, being dutiful to parents, being kind to neighbours, fulfilling obligations, purifying deeds for Allaah, putting trust in Him, seeking help from Him, being pleased with His pre-decrees, submission to His rule, believing in Him and His Messengers in all that they inform him and all other deeds that are beneficial to man in his worldly life and his Hereafter. In the opposite of the above lies his misery and harm in his worldly life and his Hereafter.

Had it not been because of the Divine Message, the human intellect would have not been guided to the details of what could benefit or harm him in his worldly life. Among the greatest favours of Allaah upon His slaves is that He sent His Messengers to them, revealed to them His Books and showed them the Straight Path. Had it not been for this, humans would have been like cattle or even worse. So, whoever accepts the message of Allaah and stands firm on that is among the best of all creation. But whoever rejects it and deviates from it, such is among the worst of the creation and worse in condition than the dog and pig and the most contemptible creature. There is no way the inhabitants of the earth can survive except by the effects of the message that is existent among them, for when the impacts of the message become

exterminated from the earth and the signs of their guidance become wiped off, Allaah will dismantle the heaven and the earth and bring forth the Resurrection.

Further, the dweller of the earth's need for the Message is not like their need for sun, moon, air and rain, and it is also not like their need for their own souls or like the need of the eye for the light; or like that of the body for food and drink. Rather the need for the Messenger is greater than all that and all other things one could think of or assume. The Messengers are the intermediary between Allaah and His creatures as far as His commandment and prohibitions are concerned; they are the envoys between Him and His slaves. The last of them, their leader and the dearest of them to Allaah is Muhammad. Allaah sent him as mercy for mankind and all that exists. He makes him a proof for the followers of the right path and a proof against all creatures. He commanded His slaves to follow, love, respect and honour him, and to give him all obligations due to him. Allaah took covenants and pledges from all other Prophets and Messengers that they would believe in and follow him (if they were to meet him or hear of him) and He also ordered them to take the same covenant from their believing followers. Allaah sent him at the threshold of the Hour. With him, He guided many from error, rescued many from ignorance, and opened through his Message blind eyes, deaf ears and sealed hearts. He lightened the earth through his message, after it had been in darkness and united with it the separated hearts. He straightened with the Messenger the crooked faith and explained through him the bright path. Allaah opened for him his heart, removed from him his burden, raised high his fame and subjected those who were against him to humiliation and disgrace. He sent him after a break in the succession of the sent Messengers and extermination of the impacts of the previously revealed Books; when words had been twisted and the law altered, when every nation relied on injustice in their opinions, made decisions regarding Allaah and between His slaves with their own corrupt sayings and desires. It was then that Allaah guided mankind through him and showed them the right way; He brought people from darkness to light through him and made distinction with him, between those who deserve success and those who were sinners.

Whoever follows his guidance will be rightly guided and whoever deviates from His Path will go astray and such has only oppressed himself. May Allaah bestow peace and blessings on him and all other Messengers and Prophets.<sup>1</sup>

We can now summarise man's need for the message in the following points:

1. That man is a nurtured creature and it is inevitable for him to know his Lord and Creator; to know what He wants from him and why He created him. Man cannot however know all that independently except by knowing the Prophets and the Messengers and knowing the guidance and light, which they brought.
2. Man is a component of body and soul. The nutrition for body is whatever is available of food and drink, but the nutrition of the soul has been prescribed by the One Who created the soul; that nutrition is true religion and righteous deed. So it is the Prophets and Messengers who brought true religion and guided to righteous deed.
3. Man is religious by nature and he must have a religion, which he must practice, and this religion must be the true one. So, there is no way to know the true religion except through belief in the Prophets and Messengers and to believe in all that they brought.
4. Man is in need of knowing the way that can lead him to the pleasure of Allaah in this world and to His Paradise and bliss in the Hereafter. And no one can guide to this way except the Prophets and Messengers alone.
5. Man is in himself weak and many enemies lay in wait for him: Satan wants to mislead him, evil companions make bad things fair-seeming to him and his base self incites him to do evil. Hence, he needs what can protect him against the evil plans of his enemies

---

<sup>1</sup> Qaa'idah fee wujoobil I'tisaam bir-risaalah by Ibn Taymiyyah, See: Al-Fataawaa 19 p.99-102.

and it is the Prophets and Messengers who guided man to that and clearly explained it to him.

6. Man is civil by nature, his meeting with people and his relations with them therefore need a law by which justice and equality can be established among people – the absence of which can make human life be like that of the jungle. Also, this law must be able to protect the right of every one without excessiveness and negligence and none could bring such perfect law except the Messengers and Prophets.

7. Man needs to know what can give him tranquillity and psychological security and guide him to means of real happiness. This is what the Prophets and Messengers guided to. After explaining why the creation is in need of Prophets and Messengers, it is now appropriate to discuss the final return and explain the proofs and evidences that support that.

## The Final Return

Every man knows with certainty that death is inevitable. But what is his fate after death? Will he be happy or miserable?

Many people and nations of the world believe that they will be resurrected after death and called to account for all their deeds; that they will earn good reward if they do good and punishment if they do evil.<sup>1</sup> This issue – the Resurrection and accountability – are confirmed by sound reason and supported by Divine Laws. It is based on three fundamentals:

1. Confirmation of the perfect knowledge of the Lord, may He be glorified.
2. Confirmation of His perfect Omnipotence.
3. Confirmation of His perfect Wisdom.<sup>2</sup>

There are many textual and logical evidences on the confirmation of the final return some of which are:

1. Drawing evidence on the resurrection of the dead through the creation of the heavens and the earth. Allaah says,

﴿أُولَئِكَ يَرَوْنَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ وَلَمْ يَعْ يَخْلُقِهِنَّ يَقْدِرُ عَلَىٰ أَنْ يُحْيِيَ الْمَوْتَىٰ بَلَىٰ إِنَّهُ عَلَىٰ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ﴾ ﴿٢٠﴾

*“Do they not see that Allâh, Who created the heavens and the earth, and was not wearied by their creation, is Able to give life to the dead? Yes, He is surely Able to do all things.”<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> See: Al-Jawaabus-Saheeh Vol. 4 p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> See: Al-Fawaaid by Ibn al-Qayyim p. 6-7.

He also says,

﴿ أَوَلَيْسَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ بِقَدِيرٍ عَلَىٰ أَنْ يَخْلُقَ مِثْلَهُمْ ۗ بَلَىٰ وَهُوَ  
الْخَلَّاقُ الْعَلِيمُ ﴿٤١﴾ ﴾

*"Is not He Who created the heavens and the earth, is Able to create the like of them? Yes, indeed. He is the All-Knowing Supreme Creator."*<sup>2</sup>

2. Drawing evidence of Allaah's ability to reproduce the creation once more from His ability to originate the creation without any previous example. So, He, Who is able to bring something into existence, should be able to reproduce it with greater reason. Allaah the Exalted says,

﴿ وَهُوَ الَّذِي يَبْدَأُ الْخَلْقَ ثُمَّ يُعِيدُهُ وَهُوَ أَهْوَنُ عَلَيْهِ ۗ وَلَهُ الْمَثَلُ الْأَعْلَىٰ فِي  
السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَهُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ ﴿٢١﴾ ﴾

*"And He it is Who originates the creation, then will repeat it (after it has been perished); and this is easier for Him. His is the highest description (i.e. none has the right to be worshipped but He, and there is nothing comparable unto Him)."*<sup>3</sup>

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ahqaaf 46:33.

<sup>2</sup> Yaa Seen 36:81.

<sup>3</sup> Ar-Room 30:27.



﴿ وَضَرَبَ لَنَا مَثَلًا وَنَسِيَ خَلْقَهُ ۗ قَالَ مَنْ يُحْيِي الْعِظْمَ وَهِيَ رَمِيمٌ ﴿٣٦﴾ قُلْ يُحْيِيهَا  
الَّذِي أَنْشَأَهَا أَوَّلَ مَرَّةٍ ۗ وَهُوَ بِكُلِّ خَلْقٍ عَلِيمٌ ﴿٣٧﴾ ﴾

*“And he (man) puts forth for Us a parable, and has forgotten the facts of his own creation. He says, Who will give life to these bones after they are rotten and have become dust. Say (O Muhammad): He will give life to them Who created them at the first! And He is the All-Knower of every creation.”<sup>1</sup>*

3. He created man in the best shape and in this perfect and complete form. He endowed him with limbs, power and characteristics; with flesh, bones, veins and nerves; with outlets, tools, sciences, wishes and industries. There is in all this the greatest evidence of His ability to resurrect the dead.

4. Drawing the proof of His ability to resurrect the dead in the Hereafter, from His raising up of the dead in this worldly life. Stories have been narrated of this in the Divine Books which Allaah revealed to his Messengers. Examples of this is raising up the dead by the permission of Allaah at the hands of Prophets Ibraaheem and ‘Eesaa, may peace be on them – among many others.

5. Drawing evidence of His ability to resurrect the dead from His ability to bring about things that are similar to the scenes of the Day of Congregation and Resurrection like:

a. Allaah created man from a drop of sperm that was scattered all over the body – that is why all parts of the body enjoy the intercourse – Allaah collects this drop from all parts of the body, then makes it go to the womb and created therewith the man. If all these parts were scattered and He gathered them together and created from them that man, then if they become scattered once again after death, what can prevent Him from bringing them together once more. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Yaa Seen 36:78-79.

﴿ أَفَرَأَيْتُمْ مَا تُمْنُونَ ﴿٥٨﴾ أَأَنْتُمْ تَخْلُقُونَهُ أَمْ نَحْنُ الْخَالِقُونَ ﴿٥٩﴾ ﴾

*"Then tell Me about the semen that you emit. Is it you who create it (i.e., make this semen into a perfect human being)? Or are We the Creator?"<sup>1</sup>*

b. When the plant seeds – regardless of their shapes – fall into the fertile land and water and soil overwhelm them; the logical consequence is that they become rotten and decayed; for, any of the water and soil is enough to make the seed rotten and the combination of both will can it so with greater reason. But the fact is that, the seed will not decay but remains preserved. When the humidity increases, the seed breaks open and from it comes out a plant. Does that not point to a perfect power and comprehensive wisdom? Will this All-Wise and All-Able Lord be incapable of collecting parts of man and reconstituting his limbs? Allaah says,

﴿ أَفَرَأَيْتُمْ مَا تَحْرُثُونَ ﴿٦٠﴾ أَأَنْتُمْ تَزْرَعُونَهُ أَمْ نَحْنُ الزَّارِعُونَ ﴿٦١﴾ ﴾

*"Then tell Me about the seed that you sow in the ground. Is it you that make it grow, or are We the Grower?"<sup>2</sup>*

A similar verse in meaning is Allaah's saying,

﴿ وَتَرَى الْأَرْضَ هَامِدَةً فَإِذَا أَنْزَلْنَا عَلَيْهَا الْمَاءَ اهْتَزَّتْ وَرَبَّتْ وَأَنْبَتَتْ مِنْ كُلِّ زَوْجٍ بَهِيجٍ ﴿٦٢﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Waaqi'ah 56:58-59

<sup>2</sup> Al-Waaqi'ah 56:63-64

*"And you see the earth barren, but when We sent down water (rain) on it, it is stirred (to life) and it swells and puts forth every lovely kind (of growth)."*<sup>1</sup>

6. The All-Able, All-Knowledgeable and All-Wise Creator is deemed far from producing the creation for fun and leaving them in vain. He says,

﴿ وَمَا خَلَقْنَا السَّمَاءَ وَالْأَرْضَ وَمَا بَيْنَهُمَا بَطْلًا ۚ ذَٰلِكَ ظَنُّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا ۚ فَوَيْلٌ

لِلَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا مِنَ النَّارِ ﴿٢٠﴾

*"We created not the heaven and the earth and all that is between them without purpose! That is the assumption of those who disbelieve! Then woe to those who disbelieve (in Islâmic Monotheism) from the Fire."*<sup>2</sup>

Allaah created the creation for great wisdom and lofty purpose. He says,

﴿ وَمَا خَلَقْتُ الْجِنَّ وَالْإِنْسَ إِلَّا لِيَعْبُدُونِ ﴿٢٠﴾

*"And I (Allâh) created not the jinn and mankind except that they should worship Me (Alone)."*<sup>3</sup>

It is therefore not becoming of this All-Wise Lord to regard as equal those who obey Him and those who disobey. He says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hajj 22:5

<sup>2</sup> Saad 38:27.

<sup>3</sup> Adh-Dhaariyaat 51:56.

﴿ أَمْ نَجْعَلُ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ كَالْمُفْسِدِينَ فِي الْأَرْضِ أَمْ نَجْعَلُ  
الْمُتَّقِينَ كَالْفُجَّارِ ﴾ ﴿٣٨﴾

*"Shall We treat those who believe (in the Oneness of Allâh - Islâmic Monotheism) and do righteous good deeds, as Mufsidûn (those who associate partners in worship with Allâh and commit crimes) on earth? Or shall We treat the Muttaqûn (the pious - see V.2:2), as the Fujjâr (criminals, disbelievers, the wicked)?"<sup>1</sup>*

Therefore, it is of His Perfect Wisdom and Great Power to raise up the creation on the Day of Resurrection in order to recompense every human being for his deed; and to reward the good-doer and punish the evil doer. Allaah says,

﴿ إِلَيْهِ مَرْجِعُكُمْ جَمِيعًا ۖ وَعَدَ اللَّهُ حَقًّا إِنَّهُ يَبْدَأُ الْخَلْقَ ثُمَّ يُعِيدُهُ لِيَجْزِيَ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ بِالْقِسْطِ ۗ وَالَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَهُمْ شَرَابٌ مِّنْ حَمِيمٍ وَعَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ بِمَا كَانُوا يَكْفُرُونَ ﴾ ﴿٣٩﴾

*"To Him is the return of all of you. The Promise of Allâh is true. It is He Who begins the creation and then will repeat it, that He may reward with justice those who believed (in the Oneness of Allâh - Islâmic Monotheism) and did deeds of righteousness. But those who disbelieved will have a drink of boiling fluids and painful torment because they used to disbelieve."<sup>2</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Saad 38:28.

<sup>2</sup> Yoonus 10:4. For all that has been previously mentioned, Al-Fawaaid by Ibn al-Qayyim p. 6, 9; and At-Tafseer Al-Kabeer by Ar-Raazee Vol. 2, p. 113-116.

**Belief in the Last Day – the Day of Resurrection – has great impacts on individuals and the society. Among its impacts are:**

1. It makes man endeavour to obey Allaah seeking for reward of that Day and keeps him from disobeying Him out of fear of the punishment of that Day.
2. Belief in the Last Day consoles the believer on the bliss and pleasure of this world that he misses with the pleasure and reward of the Hereafter, which he hopes for.
3. It is through the belief in the Last Day that man knows his fate after death and knows that he will get good reward for his deed if it is good, and get punished if it is evil. He knows that he will be made to stand for reckoning; that revenge will be taken on him for those he wronged in this world and the rights of those he wronged or oppressed would be taken back from him.
4. Belief in the Last Day actualises peace and security for mankind especially in this time that there is inadequate security and wars rage with no end – because, belief in Allaah and the Last Day makes man abstain from doing evil to others privately and publicly. That belief even penetrates his heart and makes him dismiss evil intentions -if he has any.
5. Belief in the Last Day deters man from doing injustice to others and violating their rights. If people believe in the Last Day, they will be safe from wronging one another and their rights will be protected.
6. Belief in the Last Day makes man look at this worldly abode as just one of the stages of life and that it is not the real life in itself.

To conclude this section, let us quote the words of “**Win Bet**” the American Christian who used to work in one of the churches and then embraced Islaam and found the fruit of belief in the Last Day. He says, “I now know answers to the questions that had very much

occupied my life. The questions are: Who am I? What do I want? Why did I come to this world? And what is my destination?"<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ad-Da'awah Magazine No. 1722, 19-9-1420 p. 37.

## Fundamentals of the Messengers' Mission

All Prophets and Messengers were unanimous in their call to general fundamentals<sup>1</sup> like belief in Allaah, His angles, His Books, His Messengers; belief in the Last Day and in pre-decree, its good and bad; and like command to worship Allaah alone without ascribing any partner to Him, to follow His path and not to follow dissenting paths; like prohibiting the four kinds of sins: all evil deeds, the apparent and the hidden; sins; unjust oppression; associating partners with Allaah in worship and worshipping idols. They also agreed on deeming Allaah far from having a wife, children, associate or equal as they agreed on prohibition of saying about Him what is not true; on prohibition of infanticide, killing unjustly; eating usury; usurping of orphan's wealth. They were unanimous on enjoining the fulfilment of covenants and giving full scale and weight, being dutiful to parents; doing justice between people; being truthful in sayings and deeds; prohibition of squandering and arrogance as well as eating up people's wealth unjustly.

Ibn Al-Qayyim<sup>2</sup> said, "All Divine Laws are unanimous in their fundamentals – even if they differ in any other things. The goodness of these laws are firmly rooted in the human intellect and had the laws not come in this form, they would have been unwise, unbeneficial and merciless though it is impossible that they should come in any other form. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَوْ اتَّبَعَ الْحَقُّ أَهْوَاءَهُمْ لَفَسَدَتِ السَّمَوَاتُ وَالْأَرْضُ وَمَنْ فِيهِنَّ ﴾<sup>c</sup>

<sup>1</sup> These general fundamentals are indicated in Suratul Baqarah 2:285, 286; and Al-An'aam 6:151, 153; Al-A'raaf 7:33; Al-Israa 17:23, 37.

<sup>2</sup> His name is Muhammad bin Abee Bakr bin Ayyoob Az-Zar'ee. He was born in 691 A.H. and died in 751 A.H.. He was one of the great Islaamic scholars and he authored many great books.

*“And if the truth would have been in accordance with their desires, verily, the heavens and the earth, and whosoever is therein would have been corrupted.”<sup>1</sup>*

How can a wise man deem it permissible that the Law of Allaah Who is the Best of judges should come in a form different from its present form?<sup>2</sup>

This is why all Prophets practiced one religion as confirmed by Allaah when He says,

﴿ يَا أَيُّهَا الرُّسُلُ كُلُوا مِنَ الطَّيِّبَاتِ وَاعْمَلُوا صَالِحًا إِنِّي بِمَا تَعْمَلُونَ عَلِيمٌ ﴿٢٤﴾ وَإِنَّ هَذِهِ أُمَّتُكُمْ أُمَّةً وَاحِدَةً وَأَنَا رَبُّكُمْ فَاتَّقُونِ ﴿٢٥﴾ ﴾

*“O (you) Messengers! Eat of the Taiyibât (all kinds of Halâl (lawful) foods (meat of slaughtered eatable animals, milk products, fats, vegetables, fruits, etc.), and do righteous deeds. Verily! I am Well-Acquainted with what you do. And verily! This, your religion (of Islâmic Monotheism), is one religion, and I am your Lord, so keep your duty to Me.”<sup>3</sup>*

He also says,

﴿ شَرَعَ لَكُمْ مِنَ الدِّينِ مَا وَصَّى بِهِ نُوحًا وَالَّذِي أَوْحَيْنَا إِلَيْكَ وَمَا وَصَّيْنَا بِهِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَمُوسَى وَعِيسَى أَنْ أَقِيمُوا الدِّينَ وَلَا تَتَفَرَّقُوا فِيهِ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Mu'minoon 23:71.

<sup>2</sup> Miftaahu daaris-sa'aadah Vol. 2, p. 383. See also: Al-Jawaabus-saheeh Vol. 4 p. 322; Lawaami'ul-anwaar by As-Safaareene Vol. 2, p. 263.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Mu'minoon 23:51-52.



"He (Allâh) has ordained for you the same religion (Islâmîc Monotheism) which He ordained for Nûh (Noah), and that which We have revealed to you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) and that which We ordained for Ibrahîm (Abraham), Mûsa (Moses) and 'Isâ (Jesus) saying you should establish religion (i.e. to do what it orders you to do practically), and make no divisions in it (religion) (i.e. various sects in religion)."<sup>1</sup>

The purpose of religion is to make mankind attain what they are created for: to worship their Lord alone without associating any partner with Him.<sup>2</sup> He ordained for them rites which they must fulfil and guaranteed for them obligations. He also gave them means that can make them attain that good, so that they can achieve the pleasure of their Lord and happiness in this world and the Hereafter according to a Divine Way that does not tear up man or afflict his person with deadly diseases that can cause a clash between his nature and soul and the world around him.

All Messengers called to the Divine Religion that presents man with creedal foundation in which he should believe, and the law which he should follow in his life. That is why Torah was a creed as well as a law and its followers were required to make it judge between them. Allaah says,

﴿ إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَا التَّوْرَةَ فِيهَا هُدًى وَنُورٌ مَحْكُمٌ بِهَا النَّبِيُّونَ الَّذِينَ أَسْلَمُوا لِلَّذِينَ هَادُوا وَالرَّبَّيِّنُونَ وَالْأَحْبَابُ ﴾

"Verily, We did send down the Taurât (Torah) (to Mûsâ (Moses)) therein was guidance and light, by which the Prophets, who submitted themselves to Allâh's Will, judged for the Jews. And the

<sup>1</sup> Ash-Shooraa 42:13.

<sup>2</sup> Majmoo' Fataawaa Vol. 2, p.6.

rabbis and the priests (too judged for the Jews by the Taurât (Torah) after those Prophets),”<sup>1</sup>

Then came the Christ who brought with him the Gospel in which there was guidance and light and in confirmation of the Torah that preceded it. Allaah says,

﴿ وَقَفَّيْنَا عَلَىٰ آثَرِهِم بِعِيسَى ابْنِ مَرْيَمَ مُصَدِّقًا لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مِنَ التَّوْرَةِ ۖ وَإَتَيْنَاهُ الْإِنْجِيلَ فِيهِ هُدًى وَنُورٌ ﴾

*"And in their footsteps, We sent 'Isâ (Jesus), son of Maryam (Mary), confirming the Taurât (Torah) that had come before him, and We gave him the Injeel (Gospel), in which was guidance and light."*<sup>2</sup>

Then Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, came with the final Divine Law and the complete religion as a witness over the laws that had come before it and to abrogate them. Allaah gave him the Qur'aan as a confirmation of the Divine Books that had come before it. Allaah says,

﴿ وَأَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ بِالْحَقِّ مُصَدِّقًا لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ وَمُهَيْمِنًا عَلَيْهِ ۖ فَاحْكُم بَيْنَهُم بِمَا أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ ۗ وَلَا تَتَّبِعْ أَهْوَاءَهُمْ عَمَّا جَاءَكَ مِنَ الْحَقِّ ۗ ﴾

*"And We have sent down to you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) the Book (this Qur'ân) in truth, confirming the Scripture that came before it and Muhaymin (trustworthy in highness and a witness) over it (old Scriptures). So judge among them by what*

<sup>1</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:44.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:46.

Allâh has revealed, and follow not their vain desires, diverging away from the truth that has come to you."<sup>1</sup>

Allaah also explains that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, and the believers who were with him believe in Him as all Prophets who were before them had done. He says,

﴿ ءَامَنَ الرَّسُولُ بِمَا أُنزِلَ إِلَيْهِ مِنْ رَبِّهِ ۚ وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ كُلٌّ ءَامَنَ بِاللَّهِ وَمَلَائِكَتِهِ  
وَكُتُبِهِ وَرُسُلِهِ ۚ لَا نَفَرَقَ بَيْنَ أَحَدٍ مِنْ رُسُلِهِ ۚ وَقَالُوا سَمِعْنَا وَأَطَعْنَا ۚ غُفْرَانَكَ  
رَبَّنَا وَإِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيرُ ﴾

"The Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) believes in what has been sent down to him from his Lord, and (so do) the believers. Each one believes in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, and His Messengers. They say, "We make no distinction between one another of His Messengers" - and they say, "We hear, and we obey. (We seek) Your Forgiveness, our Lord, and to You is the return (of all)."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:48.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Baqarah 2:285.

## **The Everlasting Message<sup>1</sup>**

All that has been previously explained of the conditions of Judaism, Christianity, Mazdaism, Zaradashtiyah shows the situation of mankind<sup>2</sup> in the 6<sup>th</sup> century A.D. when the religion became corrupted and all political, social and economical conditions were also corrupted; at a time when bloody wars became widespread, dictatorship emerged and mankind lived in stark darkness. This situation led to the darkness of the hearts as a result of disbelief and ignorance. Morals became degenerated, honours and rights were violated and mischief became the order of the day in the land and on the sea. The situation was so terrible that if any wise man were to ponder over it, he would have realised that mankind – in that age – were dying and that they were heading for abyss of no return had Allaah not rescued them with a great reformer who was bearing the torch of Prophethood and the light of guidance in order to illuminate the way for mankind and guided them to the Straight Path.

At that time, Allaah permitted that the everlasting light of Prophethood should emanate from Makkah in which there is the Great House. The Makkan environment had been like other human environments in terms of polytheism, ignorance, injustice and autocracy except that it was distinguished from other place with many qualities some of which were:

1. It was a pure environment that had not been affected by the stains of Greek, Roman or India philosophy. Its natives used to enjoy deep-rooted eloquence, lively minds and exceptional dispositions.
2. It is situated in the heart of the world. It is in the middle place between Europe, Asia and Africa, an important factor that makes it easy for the everlasting message to spread quickly and reach these continents in a short period.

---

<sup>1</sup> For detailed reading see: Ar-Raheequl-Makhtoom by Mubaarakpuri

<sup>2</sup> See section: 'Condition of the existing religions' in this book.

3. It is a secured place. Allaah protected it when Abraha (the Abyssinian King) wanted to invade it. The neighbouring Roman and Persian empires also were unable to conquer it. Even its commerce was secured in the north and south. That was a herald for the advent of this Noble Prophet. Allaah has reminded the inhabitants of this city of this great favour when He says,

﴿أَوَلَمْ نُمْكِنْ لَهُمْ حَرَمًا ءَامِنًا يُجِئُ إِلَيْهِ ثَمَرَاتُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ﴾

*"Have We not established for them a secure sanctuary (Makkah), to which are brought fruits of all kinds."*<sup>1</sup>

It is a desert environment that has preserved many of her good and commendable traits like generosity, good neighbourliness, earnest concern for honour among other qualities that qualified her for being the best suitable place for the clan of Quraysh which was well known for eloquence, oratory and honourable traits and held the positions of honour and leadership. Allaah chose His Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, to make him the last of all Prophets and Messengers. He was born in Makkah in the 6<sup>th</sup> century A.D. approximately in the year 570. He grew up an orphan, for his father died while he was still in the womb. His mother and paternal grandfather later died while he was six years old. So, his uncle took care of him and he grew up an orphan. Signs of extraordinary brilliance manifested on him; and his habits, manners and traits were different from those of his people. He never lied in his speech and never hurt anyone. He became popular with truthfulness, chastity and sincerity so much so that many of his people would entrust him with their valuable properties and he would keep them as he would preserve his own life and wealth. This made them confer on him the title "*Al-Ameen*" (the trustworthy).

<sup>1</sup> Al-Qasas 28:57

He was modest and shy and never showed himself naked in front of anyone since he came of age. He was innocent and pious and felt hurt when he saw his people worshipping idols, drinking alcohol and shedding innocent blood. He related with them only in those deeds of theirs which he loved and was pleased with and kept away from them when they indulged in their shameless acts and sins. He would help the orphans and the widows and feed the hungry.

When he was close to forty years of age, he became seriously constrained and inconvenienced by the corruption that was around him and started going for seclusion to worship his Lord and he would ask Him guidance to the Straight Path. While he was on this condition, one of the angels descended upon him with a revelation from his Lord and he commanded him to convey this religion to mankind; to call them to the worship of Allaah alone and to shun the worship of others besides him. Then Revelation of ordainments and rules continued day after day and year after year until Allaah perfected this religion for mankind and completed His favour on them with this perfection. After the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, had fulfilled his duty, Allaah caused him to die. He lived for sixty-three years; forty before prophethood and twenty-three as a Prophet and Messenger.

Whoever ponders over the conditions of the Prophets and studies their history will know with certainty that there was no way in which the Prophethood of any Prophet was established except that the Prophethood of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, was established in that way the more. If you reflect on how the Prophethood of Moosa and 'Eesaa was transmitted, you will know that it was transmitted in succession. But the succession in which the Prophethood of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, was transmitted was greater, stronger and more recent. Likewise, the succession in which their miracles are transmitted were similar but that with which the miracles of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, were transmitted is greater, for his miracles are many and the greatest of that is the Glorious

Qur'aan which is continued to be transmitted successively in voice and in letter.<sup>1</sup>

Whoever makes a comparison between what Prophets Moosaa and 'Eesaa brought and what was brought by Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, of sound belief, wise ordainments and useful knowledge, will know with certainty that all of them emanated from a single lamp: the lamp of Prophethood. Whoever compares between the conditions of the followers of the Prophets and followers of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, will know with certainty that the followers of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, were the best of all people and the most of the Prophets' followers in impact on those who came after them. They have spread the Islaamic Monotheism, propagated justice and were merciful to the weak and destitute.<sup>2</sup>

If you want additional evidences of Muhammad's Prophethood, I will quote to you the proofs and signs that were found by 'Alee bin Rabban at-Tabaree when he was a Christian. He later embraced Islaam because of those signs. They are:

1. The Messenger called to the worship of Allaah alone and shunning the worship of others beside Him. In this, he agreed with all other Prophets.
2. He showed clear signs which only Prophets of Allaah can show.
3. He predicted the future events and they came to pass as he had predicted.
4. He predicted the occurrence of many events of the world and its countries and these events came to pass as he had predicted.

---

<sup>1</sup> See special section about the Qur'aan in this book. p.

<sup>2</sup> Majmoo' al-Fataawaa Vol. 4 p. 201, 211; and Ifhaamul yahood by Samaw'al Al-Magribi p. 58-59.

That the Book brought by Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, – the Qur'aan – is a sign of Prophethood for it is the most eloquent Book, sent down unto an illiterate man who could neither read nor write, but yet challenged the orators to produce the like thereof or the like of a Soorah\* in it; and because of the fact that Allaah guarantees its preservation, preserved the correct belief with it, guaranteed it as the perfect divine ordainment and established with it the best community.

5. That he is the seal of all Prophets and that had he not been sent, prophecies of the past Prophets who gave glad tiding of his advent would have turned false.

6. That all Prophets had prophesied about him before his advent since a long time. They had described his mission, his country and submission of other nations and kings to him and his nation. They also mentioned the spread of his religion.

7. His victory over nations that waged war against him as a sign of his Prophethood; for it would be impossible for a man who falsely claims to be a Messenger of Allaah and yet be strengthened by Allaah with victory, authority, prevalence over enemies, spread of his message and abundance of his followers; for all this cannot happen except in the hand of a truthful Prophet.

8. His religious rites and acts of worship, his decency, truthfulness, commendable character, manners and ordinances. All this cannot be found together except in a Prophet.

After mentioning these proofs, this guided man then said, "These are illuminating traits and sufficient proofs. Whoever is endowed with them must be a Prophet; such a person has hit the target and prospered; and the belief in him is mandatory. Whoever rejects

---

\* Soorah literary means degree. Islamically, it is a section of the glorious Qur'aan that contains a group of verses that may or may not be related in meanings. Some translators do translate it as a chapter which is quite inaccurate because a chapter is a combination of paragraphs in which related issues are discussed. AA



these proofs and denies them has incurred loss in his efforts and lost his worldly life and Hereafter.”<sup>1</sup>

At the end of this section, I will narrate to you two testimonies: that of the former roman King who was a contemporary of Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, and that of our contemporary Christian Evangelist John Saint.

### **The First Testimony: That of Heraclius:**

Al-Bukhaaree reported the story of Abu Sufyaan when the Roman King called him. Abu Sufyaan said that Heraclius sent to him in the company of some Qurayshee riders who went to Syria for commerce, at a time that the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, was in a truce with Abu Sufyaan and Quraysh pagans. They came to Heraclius while they were at Ilya.<sup>2</sup> Heraclius invited him to his court and with him were great men of Rome. He called them and his interpreter.

He then asked Abu Sufyaan and his company: “Which one of you is closest to this man who claims to be a Prophet?”

Abu Sufyaan said, “I am the closest to him in blood.”

Heraclius then told his retinue, “Bring him close to me and let his companions stand behind him.” He then told his interpreter, “Tell them: I will ask this (Abu Sufyaan) about the man who claims to be a Prophet, so, if he lies to me, you should refute that.”

Abu Sufyaan said, “By Allaah! If not because of the shame of having a lie being recorded against me, I would have lied about him. The first question he asked me about him was: How is his

---

<sup>1</sup> Ad-deen wad-dawla fee ithbaati nubuwwati Muhammad, by ‘Alee bin Rabban At-Tabarane p. 47. Also see: Al-Islam by Al-Qurtubee p. 362.

<sup>2</sup> A town in Syria.

lineage amongst you?" Abu Sufyaan answered, "He is of noble lineage among us."

He then asked, "Has anybody among you ever uttered this word before him?"

I said, "No."

He said, "Had anyone among his forefathers been a king?"

I said, "No."

He said, "Are his followers noble men or weak people?"

I said, "Weak people."

He said, "Do they increase or decrease?"

I said, "They increase."

He said, "Did any of them renounce his religion in annoyance after having embraced it?"

I said, "No"

He said, "Does he betray?"

I said, "No. But we are now in a truce with him and we do not know what he is going to do."

Abu Sufyaan added, "This is the only statement I could say against him."

Heraclius further asked, "Did you go to war with him?"

I said, "Yes!"

He said, "How was your war with him?"

I said, "It was an alternate victory. He won sometimes and we won sometimes."

He said, "What does he command you to do?"

I said, "He said, 'Worship God alone and do not associate anything in worship with him and shun what your fathers say.' He enjoined on us prayer, truthfulness, probity and kindness to the kith and kin."

Heraclius then told his interpreter, "Tell him:

I asked you of his lineage and you said that he has a noble lineage among you. That is the case with the Messengers. They were sent from the noble lineage among their people.

I asked you: Had anybody among you claimed what he claims and you said, No. And I say: If anyone had said before him what he says now, I would have said that, he was repeating what others have said before him.

I asked you: Had any of his ancestors been a king? And you said, No. If any of his forefathers had been a king, I would have said that he is asking for the Kingdom of his father.

I asked you: Have you ever suspected him of telling lies before he said what he said and you answered, No. I then know that he could not have shunned lying to people and tell lie against God.

I asked you whether those who follow him are noble men or weak people, and you answered that his followers are weak people. Yes, those are the followers of the Messengers.

I asked you if they increase or decrease in number and you said that they increase. That is how faith does until it becomes completed.

I asked you, if any of his followers renounced his faith in annoyance after having embraced it and you said, No. Yes, that is how faith does after having penetrated the hearts.

I asked you if he betray and you said, No. That is how Messengers do. They do not betray.

And I asked you about what he commanded you to do and you said that, he enjoined that you worship Allaah alone and associate nothing with Him in worship, that he enjoined on you prayers, truthfulness, chastity; that he forbids you from worshipping idols. If all that you told me is true, he shall control where I am standing now. I know that such a Prophet will emerge but I did not think that he would be from amongst you. Had I known that I would meet him, I would have suffered hardship to meet him. And had I been with him, I would have washed his feet."

He then called for the letter of the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, which he sent with Dihya to the ruler of Basra. He presented the letter to Heraclius and he read it. There was in the letter;

In the Name of God, Most Gracious, Most Merciful. From Muhammad, the Messenger of Allaah, to Heraclius, the ruler of Rome. Peace be upon him who follows the guidance. I am inviting you with the invitation of Islaam. Accept Islaam, you will be safe and Allaah will give you your reward twice. But if you turn away, you will bear the sins of *Yarisin*.

"O people of the Scripture! Come to a word that is just between us and you, that we worship none but Allaah (alone) and that we associate no partner with Him, and that none of us shall take others as lords besides Allaah. Then, if they turn away, say: Bear witness that we are Muslims."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Bukhaaree, the book of beginning of revelation.

**The Second Testimony:**

That of the contemporary Christian Evangelist John Cent who said, "After continuous reading about Islaam and its principles that serve individuals and society, and its justice in establishing a society based on foundations of equality and monotheism, I found myself embracing Islaam with all my sense an spirit and I pledged to Allaah, may He be glorified – that I would be a propagator of Islaam, and an evangelist to its guidance in all parts of the world."

This man has arrived at this certainty after having studied Christianity and beecame well-versed in it. He found that it could not provide answers to many questions of human life. So he started doubting it. Later, he studied communism and Buddhism but yet could not find what he wanted there, he finally studied Islaam deeply, then believed in it and called unto it.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ad-Deen Al-Fitree Al-Abadee by Al-Mubashshir At-Taraazee Al-Husaynee 2 p. 319.

## **The Seal of Prophethood**

It is clear to you from what he has been previously discussed, the reality of Prophethood, its signs and proofs and the signs of Prophethood of Muhammad. Before we start discussing on the seal of Prophethood, you must know that, Allaah does not send a Messenger except for one of these following reasons:

1. That the message of the Prophet is specifically meant for a particular people in which the concerned Messenger is not obliged to convey his message to the neighbouring nations, and that Allaah sends another Prophet with a special message to another nation.
2. That the message of the previous Prophet has become extinct, in which case Allaah sends another Prophet who will reform for people their religion.
3. That the Law of the previous Prophet is valid only for its time and no longer suitable for subsequent periods, then Allaah sends another Messenger with another Law that will be suitable for the another particular time and place. The Wisdom of Allaah however, has necessitated that He sends Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, to all mankind with a Message that is suitable for all times and places and to protect it against altering and interpolating hands, so that it can remain His Living Message by which people will live and that will be pure and free from stains of interpolations and alterations. It was for this reason that Allaah made it the seal of all Messages.<sup>1</sup>

Among things with which Allaah distinguished Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is that He made him the seal of all Prophets after whom there would be no Prophet. This is because, Allaah completed with him all Messages, ended with him

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Aqeedah At-Tahaawiyya p. 156; Lawaami'ul anwaar, 2 p. 269, 277; and Mabaadi'ul-Islaam p. 64.

all Laws, perfected with him the structure and actualised in his Prophethood the Prophecy of Jesus Christ when he said, <sup>1</sup>

The Reverend Ibrahim Khaleel – who has become a Muslim – regarded this text as an equivalent of the saying of the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, “Indeed, the example of me and that of the Prophets before me is like that of a man who has perfectly built a house and adorned it except the place of a brick in a corner which he left unfilled. People went round it and admired it and said: Why not fix up this brick? He said, ‘I am the brick and I am the seal of the Prophets.’”<sup>2</sup>

It is for this reason that Allaah made the Book brought by Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, as a witness over all previous Books and an abolisher for them all. Just as He made the Law of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, the abolisher of preceding Laws. Allaah guarantees the protection of his Message, hence, it was transmitted successfully. The Qur’aan was transmitted in succession. The practical implementation of the teachings of this religion and its acts of worship, sunnah and rules were also transmitted in succession.

Whoever reads the biography of the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, and his Sunnah will know that the companions had preserved for humanity all situations, sayings and deeds of Muhammad. They transmitted his acts of worship for his Lord, his strife in His cause, his remembrance of Him and his seeking for His forgiveness. They transmitted his generosity, courage, his relationship with his companions and those visiting him. They transmitted his joy, sorrow, journeys, sojourn, manners of his eating, drinking and clothing and how he kept awake and slept. When you know all this, you will know with certainty that this religion is guaranteed by Allaah’s protection and you will then know

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 21:42.

<sup>2</sup> See, “Muhammad in the Torah, Gospel and the Qur’aan” by Ibraheem Khaleel Ahmad, p. 73. The hadeeth is reported by Al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

that he is the last of all Prophets and Messengers; for Allaah has told us that this Messenger is the last of all Prophets. He says,

﴿ مَا كَانَ مُحَمَّدٌ أَبَا أَحَدٍ مِّن رِّجَالِكُمْ وَلَٰكِن رَّسُولَ اللَّهِ وَخَاتَمَ النَّبِيِّينَ ﴾<sup>1</sup>

*"Muhammad (peace be upon him) is not the father of any of your men, but he is the Messenger of Allâh and the last (end) of the Prophets."*<sup>1</sup>

Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, also said about himself, "I am sent to all mankind and I was made the seal of all Prophets."<sup>2</sup>

Now let us define Islaam and explain its essence, sources, pillars and degrees.

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ahzaab 33:40.

<sup>2</sup> Ahmad and Muslim.



## **Meaning of the Word: Islaam**

When you consult the dictionaries, you will find that the word Islaam means submission, obedience, surrender and compliance with the command and prohibition of the commander without objections. Allaah has named the true religion, 'Islaam' for it is an obedience to him, submission to His Commands without any resistance, purifying acts of worship for Him, believing in His words and having faith in Him. Islaam then became a proper name for the religion brought by Muhammad.

### **Definition of Islaam**

Why this religion was named 'Islaam'? Adherents of various religions all over the world have named their religions, either with the name of a man or a particular race like Christianity, which was named after Jesus Christ; and Buddhism named after its founder Buddha; and Zaradashtism named after its founder and flag banner, Zaradasht. Judaism also emerged among the tribe of Judah and so on. It is only Islaam that is not attributed to any particular man or nation. Its name indicates a special characteristic that the meaning of Islaam denotes. It is evident in this name that no man has any role in bringing this religion into existence and that it is not peculiar with any nation to the exclusion of others. Its only goal is to make all people of the earth have characteristics of Islaam. So, whoever is characterised with the qualities of Islaam among ancient people and contemporary people is a Muslim, just as he shall be called a Muslim, anyone who possesses its qualities among the coming generations.

### **The reality of Islaam**

It is known that everything in this world subjects to a particular rule and established norm. The sun, the moon, the stars and the earth are all subjected to a general rule which they cannot march against or deviate from even for a hair's breadth. Even man, when you ponder over him very well, it will be clear to you that he absolutely

submits to the Laws of Allaah. He cannot breath or feel a need for water, food, nourishment, light and heat except according to the Divine Decree that regulates his life; and all parts of his body submit to this Decree. The functions that these parts perform cannot be carried out except according to what Allaah has prescribed for him.

This comprehensive Divine Ordainment which man surrenders to and from which none in this universe –right from the planet in the heaven to the smallest seed in the sand of the earth – can escape from obeying is the Divine Ordainment of the Magnificent, the Sovereign and the All-Powerful Lord. If all that is in the heavens and the earth and all that is in between both surrenders to this Divine Ordainment, that means the whole world submits to and obeys that All-Powerful Sovereign Who created it. In this aspect, it is then clear that Islaam is the religion of the whole universe. For Islaam means, submission and obedience to the command of the Commander and His Prohibitions without objection as it has been previously asserted. The sun, the moon and the earth all surrender to Him. Air, water, light, darkness and heat, all surrender to Him; the tree, the stone and the animals all surrender. Even the man who does not know his Lord and denies His existence and signs or worships others besides Him, or associates others with Him in worship surrenders by nature to Him.

If you have known all that, let us now have a look at man, you will find that two factors are struggling to win his attention:

**One:** His natural inclination; like submission to Allaah, loving to worship Him, seeking nearness to Him, loving what He loves of truth, good and honesty; hating what He hates of falsehood, evil, injustice and wrong; and other natural factors like: love for money, family and children and desire for food, drink and sex and necessary physical functions that follow that.

**Two:** Man's free will and choice. Allaah has sent Messengers to him and revealed Books so that he might distinguish between truth and falsehood; guidance and error; good and evil. He gave him

mental power and understanding so that he can make his choice with sure knowledge. If he so wills, he takes to the good path that leads him to truth and guidance; and if he so wills, he takes to the evil path that leads him to evil and perdition.

If you therefore, look at man in the perspective of the first factor, you will find that he is created to submit to Allaah, conditioned to adhere to that submission without making any deviation whatsoever, just like any other creature.

But if you look at him in the perspective of the second factor, you will find him as a free creature, who chooses what he wants. He may choose to become a Muslim or to become an infidel... *"Whether he be grateful or ungrateful."*<sup>1</sup>

Hence, you find people divided into two categories:

A man who knows his Creator, and believes in Him as his Lord and God whom he worships alone and follows his Law in his life voluntarily. He is also conditioned to submit to his Lord, from Who he cannot deviate and Whose ordainments he follows— such a man is the complete Muslim whose Islaam is perfect and whose knowledge is sound; for he knows Allaah, his Creator and Fashioner, Who sent Messengers to him and endowed him with the power of knowledge and learning. Such has had sound reason and correct opinion; for he has made use of his thought and then decided not to worship but Allaah Who blessed him with understanding and sound opinions in matters. His tongue speaks only the truth; for now, he only believes in One Lord Who is Allaah, the Exalted, Who gave him power to speak. It now becomes as if nothing remains in his life but the truth; for he follows and surrenders to the Law of Allaah in that which he has free will; and there exists between him and other creatures in the universe bond of familiarity and friendliness, for, he worships none but Allaah, the All-Wise, All-Knowledgeable, Whom all creatures worship, and unto Whose Commandments and Ordainments all surrender and

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Insaan 76:3.

submit. And Allaah has subjected all these creatures to you, O man!

### Reality of disbelief

On the contrary is another man, who was born in submission to Allaah and lived all his life in submission to Allaah but never felt this submission or had any idea of it. He knew not his Lord, nor believed in His Law or followed His Messengers. He did not use the knowledge and intellect that Allaah gave him to recognize his Creator Who carved for him his ears and eyes. He rather denied His existence, he disdained His worship and refused to submit to His Laws in matters of his life in which he is given the right of disposition and choice. Or he associated others with Him in worship and refused to believe in His signs that indicate His Oneness. Such a man is a *Kaafir*. For the meaning of '*Kufr*' in the language, is 'to cover and conceal'. So this man is called a '*Kaafir*' for he conceals his nature and covers it with ignorance and insolence; and the nature of the world and that of his own self are hidden from him. You therefore, see him using his intellectual and logical power only in that which contradicts his nature. He would not see anything but that which could corrupt his nature. It is now left to you to estimate the extent of deep error and clear transgression to which the disbeliever has degenerated.<sup>1</sup>

This Islaam which you are required to practice is not a difficult matter, but very easy for whomsoever Allaah makes it easy. Islaam is the religion which this entire universe follows.

﴿وَلَهُدَّ أَسْلَمَ مَنْ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ طَوْعًا وَكَرْهًا﴾

*"And to Him submitted all creatures in the heavens and the earth, willingly or unwillingly"*<sup>2</sup>

Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Mabaadiul Islaam 3,4.

<sup>2</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:83.

﴿ إِنَّ الدِّينَ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ الْإِسْلَامُ ﴾

*"Truly, the religion with Allâh is Islâm."*<sup>1</sup>

It is man's total submission to Allaah as He, Great is His praise asserts,

﴿ فَإِنْ حَاجُّوكَ فَقُلْ أَسْلَمْتُ وَجْهِيَ لِلَّهِ وَمَنِ اتَّبَعَنِ ﴾

*"So if they dispute with you (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) say: 'I have submitted myself to Allâh (in Islâm), and (so have) those who follow me.'*<sup>2</sup>

The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, also explained the meaning of Islaam when he said, "It is to submit your heart to Allaah, to direct your face to Allaah (in worship) and to give the obligatory Zakaah."<sup>3</sup>

A man asked the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him,; 'What is Islaam?'

The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, answered: 'It is to surrender your heart to Allaah; and that Muslims should be safe from the harm of your tongue and hand.'

The man said: 'Which Islaam is best?'

He answered: 'The Faith (Eemaan)'

He asked: 'What is Faith?'

---

<sup>1</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:19.

<sup>2</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:20.

<sup>3</sup> Ahmad and Ibn Hibbaan.

He answered: 'To believe in Allaah, His angels, His Books, His Messengers and to believe in Resurrection after death.'<sup>1</sup>

The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, also said, "Islaam is to testify that there is no deity worthy of worship except Allaah and that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is the Messenger of Allaah; to observe the prayers, to give the Zakaah, to fast in the month of Ramadaan and to perform pilgrimage to the House if you are able to."<sup>2</sup>

He also said, "The Muslim is the one from the evil of whose hand and tongue all Muslims are safe."<sup>3</sup>

This religion – the religion of Islaam – is the one besides which Allaah accepts no other religion, not from former generations or later generations. For all Prophets were Muslims. Allaah says about Prophet Noah,

﴿ وَأَنْتُمْ عَلَيْهِمْ نَبَأُ نُوحٍ إِذْ قَالَ لِقَوْمِهِ يَنْقُومِ إِنْ كَانَ كَبُرَ عَلَيْكُمْ مَقَامِي وَتَذَكِيرِي بِعَاقِبَتِ اللَّهِ فَعَلَى اللَّهِ تَوَكَّلْتُ ﴾

*"And recite to them the news of Nûh (Noah). When he said to his people: "O my people, if my stay (with you), and my reminding (you) of the Ayât (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.) of Allâh is hard on you, then I put my trust in Allâh."*

Till He says,

<sup>1</sup> Ahmad. See: Fadlul Islaam by Imaam Muhammad bin Abdul-Wahhaab p. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Muslim.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Bukhaaree and Muslim.

﴿ وَأُمِرْتُ أَنْ أَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ ﴾

"...and I have been commanded to be of the Muslims (i.e. those who submit to Allâh's Will)."<sup>1</sup>

The Almighty also says about Abraham,

﴿ إِذْ قَالَ لَهُ رَبُّهُ أَسْلِمْ ۖ قَالَ أَسْلَمْتُ لِرَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴾

"When his Lord said to him, "Submit (i.e. be a Muslim)!" He said, "I have submitted myself (as a Muslim) to the Lord of the 'Alamîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists)."<sup>2</sup>

He says about Moses,

﴿ وَقَالَ مُوسَىٰ يُنْقَوْمُ إِن كُنتُمْ ءَامِنُمْ بِاللَّهِ فَعَلَيْهِ تَوَكَّلُوا إِن كُنتُمْ مُسْلِمِينَ ﴾

"And Mûsa (Moses) said: "O my people! If you have believed in Allâh, then put your trust in Him if you are Muslims (those who submit to Allâh's Will)."<sup>3</sup>

He has the following to say about Jesus Christ,

﴿ وَإِذْ أَوْحَيْتُ إِلَى الْحَوَارِيِّينَ أَنْ ءَامِنُوا بِي وَبِرَسُولِي قَالُوا ءَامِنَّا وَأَشْهَدُ بِأَنَّا

﴿ مُسْلِمُونَ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Yoonus 10:71-72.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Baqarah 2:131

<sup>3</sup> Yoonus 10:84.



*"And when I (Allâh) revealed to Al-Hawârîeen (the disciples) (of 'Isâ (Jesus)) to believe in Me and My Messenger, they said: "We believe. And bear witness that we are Muslims."*

This religion – Islaam – derives all its laws, beliefs and rules from the Divine Revelation: the Qur'aan and Sunnah. I will give you a brief information about them.

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Maa'idah 5:111.

## **Sources of Islaam**

It has been a habit for adherents of abrogated religions and man-made creeds to hallow their inherited books, which were written since ancient times and whose authors or translators or the time of their writing may not really be known. They were just written by some people who used to suffer from what other human beings suffer from like weakness, defect, whimsical desires and forgetfulness.

As for the Qur'aan, it is different from all other books in that, it depends on the true source which is the Divine Revelation: the Qur'aan and Sunnah. Following is the brief introduction of both:

### **A. The Glorious Qur'aan:**

You have known previously that Islaam is the religion of Allaah, that was why Allaah revealed the Qur'aan to His Messenger, Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, as a guidance for the pious, a Law for the Muslims, a healing for the disease that is in the hearts of those whom Allaah wants to heal and a light for those whom Allaah wants to give success. It contains the fundamentals for which Allaah sent the Messengers.<sup>1</sup> The Qur'aan was not the first Book to be revealed nor was Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, the first Messenger to be sent. Allaah has revealed the Scriptures to Abraham; Torah to Moses and the Gospel to Jesus. All these Books were revelations from Allaah to His Prophets and Messengers. But the contents of most of these Books have been lost and have become extinct, and interpolation and alterations have entered them.

As for the Qur'aan, Allaah Himself guarantees its protection and makes it the witness and abolisher of earlier Books. He says while addressing the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him,

---

<sup>1</sup> As-Sunnah wamakaanatuhaa fit-tashree'il Islaami by Mustafa As-Sibaa'ee p. 376.

﴿ وَأَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ بِالْحَقِّ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ وَمُهَيِّمًا عَلَيْهِ ﴾

"And We have sent down to you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) the Book (this Qur'ân) in truth, confirming the Scripture that came before it and Muhaymin (trustworthy in highness and a witness) over it (old Scriptures)."<sup>1</sup>

He describes the Qur'aan as an explanation of everything,

﴿ وَنَزَّلْنَا عَلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ تَبْيِينًا لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ ﴾

"And We have sent down to you the Book (the Qur'an) as an exposition of everything."<sup>2</sup>

He calls it guidance and mercy,

﴿ فَقَدْ جَاءَكُمْ بَيِّنَةٌ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ وَهُدًى وَرَحْمَةٌ ﴾

"So now has come unto you a clear proof (the Qur'ân) from your Lord, and a guidance and a mercy."<sup>3</sup>

He describes it as that which guides to uprightness when He says,

﴿ إِنَّ هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ يَهْدِي لِلَّتِي هِيَ أَقْوَمُ ﴾

"Verily, this Qur'ân guides to that which is most just and right."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:48.

<sup>2</sup> An-Nahl 16:89.

<sup>3</sup> Al-An'aam 6:157.

The Qur'aan guides mankind to the most righteous path in all aspects of their life.

Whoever reflects on how the Qur'aan was revealed and how it was preserved will give the book its due estimation and purify his intention for Allaah alone. Allaah, the Exalted says,

﴿ وَإِنَّهُ لَنَزِيلُ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿١٧﴾ نَزَلَ بِهِ الرُّوحُ الْأَمِينُ ﴿١٨﴾ عَلَى قَلْبِكَ لِتَكُونَ مِنَ الْمُنذِرِينَ ﴿١٩﴾ ﴾

*"And truly, this (the Qur'ân) is a revelation from the Lord of the 'Alamîn (mankind, jinn and all that exists), Which the trustworthy Rûh (Jibrîl (Gabriel)) has brought down Upon your heart (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) that you may be (one) of the warners,"*<sup>2</sup>

So the One Who revealed the Qur'aan is Allaah, Lord of all the worlds; and the one who brought it is the trustworthy spirit Gabriel; and the one in whose heart it was revealed is the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him.

The Qur'aan is an everlasting miracle for Muhammad. It contains signs that shall abide till the Day of Resurrection. The signs and miracles of previous Prophets used to end at the termination of the Prophets' lives, but Allaah has made the Qur'aan the everlasting proof.

It is the extensive proof and dazzling sign. Allaah challenges the mankind to produce the like thereof or ten soorahs like it or even a single soorah that resembles it, and they are unable to do that in spite of the fact that it is composed of letters and words and the

<sup>1</sup> Al-Israa 17:9.

<sup>2</sup> Ash-Shuara26:192-194.

people on whom it was first revealed were people of eloquence and rhetoric. Allaah says,

﴿ أَمْ يَقُولُونَ افْتَرَاهُ قُلْ فَأْتُوا بِسُورَةٍ مِّثْلِهِ وَادْعُوا مَنِ اسْتِطَعْتُمْ مِّن دُونِ اللَّهِ إِن كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ ﴾

*"Or do they say: "He (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) has forged it?" Say: "Bring then a Sûrah (chapter) like unto it, and call upon whomsoever you can besides Allâh, if you are truthfull!"<sup>1</sup>*

Among the things that testify to the fact that the Qur'aan is a revelation from Allaah is that it contains stories of the past nations, prophesied future events that came to happen as it has prophesied and the fact that it mentions many scientific facts that have not been discovered until recently. Another proof of its being a Divinely revealed Book is that the Prophet on whom it was revealed was unknown with anything similar to that or reported to have known anything similar to the Qur'aan. Allaah says,

﴿ قُلْ لَوْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ مَا تَلَوْتُهُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَلَا أَدْرَاكُمْ بِهِ فَقَدْ لَبِثْتُ فِيكُمْ عُمُرًا مِّن قَبْلِهِ أَفَلَا تَعْقِلُونَ ﴾

*"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "If Allâh had so willed, I should not have recited it to you nor would He have made it known to you. Verily, I have stayed amongst you a life time before this. Have you then no sense?"<sup>2</sup>*

He was rather an illiterate who neither read nor wrote. He did not also, visit any Shaykh or men to produce the like of the Qur'aan. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Yoonus 10:38.

<sup>2</sup> Yoonus 10:16.

﴿ وَمَا كُنْتَ تَتْلُوا مِنْ قَبْلِهِ مِنْ كِتَابٍ وَلَا تَخُطُّهُ بِيَمِينِكَ إِذًا لِآرْتَابِ الْمُبْطِلِينَ ﴾

"Neither did you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) read any book before it (this Qur'ân), nor did you write any book (whatsoever) with your right hand. In that case, indeed, the followers of falsehood might have doubted."<sup>1</sup>

This unlettered man who has been described in the Torah and the Gospel that he would not read nor write, was visited by Jewish and Christian monks – who had some remnants of the Torah and the Gospel – and asked about issues by which they differed, and they would request for his arbitration in matters in which they contended. Allaah says, explaining the description of Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, in the Torah and the Gospel,

﴿ الَّذِينَ يَتَّبِعُونَ الرَّسُولَ النَّبِيَّ الَّذِي يَجِدُونَهُ مَكْتُوبًا عِنْدَهُمْ فِي التَّوْرَةِ وَالْإِنْجِيلِ يَأْمُرُهُمْ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ وَيَنْهَاهُمْ عَنِ الْمُنْكَرِ وَهُمْ أَلْطِيبَتٌ وَخَرَّمَ عَلَيْهِمُ الْحَبِيبَتُ ﴾

Those who follow the Messenger, the Prophet who can neither read nor write (i.e. Muhammad (peace be upon him)) whom they find written with them in the Taurât (Torah) (Deut, xviii, 15) and the Injeel (Gospel) (John xiv, 16), - he commands them for Al-Ma'rûf (i.e. Islâmic Monotheism and all that Islâm has ordained); and forbids them from Al-Munkar (i.e. disbelief, polytheism of all kinds, and all that Islâm has forbidden); he allows them as lawful At-Taiyibât ((i.e. all good and lawful) as regards things, deeds, beliefs,

<sup>1</sup> Al-'Ankaboot 29:48.

persons, foods), and prohibits them as unlawful Al-Khabâ'ith (i.e. all evil and unlawful as regards things, deeds, beliefs, persons, foods)."<sup>1</sup>

Allaah also says, while speaking about the question the Jews and the Christians asked the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him,

﴿ يَسْأَلُكَ أَهْلُ الْكِتَابِ أَنْ تُنزِلَ عَلَيْهِمْ كِتَابًا مِنَ السَّمَاءِ ﴾

"The People of the Scripture ask you to cause a book to descend upon them from heaven."<sup>2</sup>

﴿ وَتَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ الرُّوحِ ﴾

"And they ask you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) concerning the Rûh (the Spirit)."<sup>3</sup>

﴿ وَتَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ ذِي الْقَرْنَيْنِ ﴾

"And they ask you about Dhul-Qarnain."<sup>4</sup>

﴿ إِنَّ هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ يُقْصُّ عَلَىٰ بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ أَكْثَرَ الَّذِي هُمْ فِيهِ يَخْتَلِفُونَ ﴾

﴿

<sup>1</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:157.

<sup>2</sup> An-Nisaa 4:153.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Israa 17:85.

<sup>4</sup> Al-Kahf 18:83.

*"Verily, this Qur'ân narrates to the Children of Israel most of that in which they differ."*<sup>1</sup>

Reverend Abraham Philips, has had a failed attempt, in his doctorate thesis to undermine the Qur'aan. The Qur'aan rather overwhelmed him with its proofs, evidences and signs. The man proclaimed his own weakness, surrendered to his Creator and embraced Islaam.<sup>2</sup>

When one of the Muslims presented a translated copy of the meaning of the Noble Qur'aan as a gift to the American doctor, Jeffrey Lang, he found that this Qur'aan was addressing him, answering his questions and removing the barrier between him and His own soul. He said, "It seems that He Who revealed the Qur'aan knows me more than I know myself."<sup>3</sup>

Yes, the One Who revealed the Qur'aan is the Creator of man, and He is Allaah, may He be Glorified. He says,

﴿ أَلَا يَعْلَمُ مَنْ خَلَقَ وَهُوَ اللَّطِيفُ الْخَبِيرُ ﴾

*"Should not He Who has created know? And He is the Most Kind and Courteous (to His slaves) All-Aware (of everything)."*<sup>4</sup>

So, the man's reading of the translation of the meaning of the Noble Qur'aan led him to Islaam and to the writing of his book from which I am quoting.

---

<sup>1</sup> An-Naml 27:76.

<sup>2</sup> See: Al-Mustashriqoon wal-mubashshiroon fil-'aalamil 'arabee wal Islaamee, Ibrahim Khalil Ahmad.

<sup>3</sup> "Struggle in the Cause of Faith", by Dr. Jeffrey Lang; Arabic translation by Mundhir Al-'Absee p34.

<sup>4</sup> Al-Mulk 67:14.



The Qur'aan is comprehensive to all that man needs. It contains all fundamentals of faith, legislations, human interactions and manners. Allaah says,

﴿ مَا فَرَّطْنَا فِي الْكِتَابِ مِنْ شَيْءٍ ﴾

*"We have neglected nothing in the Book."<sup>1</sup>*

In the Qur'aan, there is call to belief in the Oneness of Allaah, and mention of His Names, Attributes and deeds. It calls to belief in the authenticity of what the Prophets and Messengers brought. It affirms the Resurrection, reward and reckoning and establishes evidences and proofs for that. It narrates the stories of past nations, the punishment meted out to them in this world as well as the torment and exemplary punishment that awaits them in the Hereafter.

It also contains many proofs and signs that dazzle the scientists and that is suitable for all generations and ages; and in which many scholars and researchers find what they look for. I will give only three examples that reveal some of these facts.

1. His saying,

﴿ وَهُوَ الَّذِي مَرَجَ الْبَحْرَيْنِ هَذَا عَذْبٌ فُرَاتٌ وَهَذَا مِلْحٌ أُجَاجٌ وَجَعَلَ بَيْنَهُمَا بَرْزَخًا وَحِجْرًا مَحْجُورًا ﴾

*"And it is He Who has let free the seas: one palatable and sweet and the other salty and bitter; and He has set a barrier and a complete partition between them."<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:38.

He also says,

﴿ أَوْ كَظُلُمَاتٍ فِي بَحْرٍ لُجِّيٍّ يَغْشَاهُ مَوْجٌ مِّنْ فَوْقِهِ مَوْجٌ مِّنْ فَوْقِهِ سَحَابٌ ظُلُمَاتٌ  
بَعْضُهَا فَوْقَ بَعْضٍ إِذَا أَخْرَجَ يَدَهُ لَمْ يَكَدْ يَرَاهَا ۗ وَمَنْ لَّمْ يَجْعَلِ اللَّهُ لَهُ نُورًا فَمَا  
لَهُ مِنْ نُورٍ ﴿٥٣﴾ ﴾

"Or (the state of a disbeliever) is like the darkness in a vast deep sea, overwhelmed with waves topped by waves, topped by dark clouds, (layers of) darkness upon darkness: if a man stretches out his hand, he can hardly see it! And he for whom Allâh has not appointed light, for him there is no light."<sup>2</sup>

It is well-known that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, never travelled by sea on a sea neither was there in his time the material instruments that could have helped to discover the depths of the sea. Who else could have provided Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, with this data if not Allaah?

2. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ خَلَقْنَا الْإِنْسَانَ مِنْ سُلَالَةٍ مِّنْ طِينٍ ﴿٥٤﴾ ثُمَّ جَعَلْنَاهُ نُطْفَةً فِي قَرَارٍ مَّكِينٍ ﴿٥٥﴾  
ثُمَّ خَلَقْنَا النَّطْفَةَ عَلَقَةً فَخَلَقْنَا الْعَلَقَةَ مُضْغَةً فَخَلَقْنَا الْمُضْغَةَ عِظْمًا فَكَسَوْنَا  
الْعِظْمَ لَحْمًا ثُمَّ أَنْشَأْنَاهُ خَلْقًا آخَرَ ۚ فَتَبَارَكَ اللَّهُ أَحْسَنُ الْخَالِقِينَ ﴿٥٦﴾ ﴾

"And indeed We created man (Adam) out of an extract of clay (water and earth). Thereafter We made him (the offspring of Adam) as a Nutfah (mixed drops of the male and female sexual discharge

<sup>1</sup> Al-Furqaan 25:53.

<sup>2</sup> An-Noor 24:40.

and lodged it) in a safe lodging (womb of the woman). Then We made the Nutfah into a clot (a piece of thick coagulated blood), then We made the clot into a little lump of flesh, then We made out of that little lump of flesh bones, then We clothed the bones with flesh, and then We brought it forth as another creation. So Blessed is Allâh, the Best of creators."<sup>1</sup>

The scientists did not discover these subtle details about the stages of embryonic development until recently.

3. Allaah also says,

﴿ وَعِنْدَهُ مَفَاتِحُ الْغَيْبِ لَا يَعْلَمُهَا إِلَّا هُوَ وَيَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ وَمَا تَسْقُطُ مِنْ وَرَقَةٍ إِلَّا يَعْلَمُهَا وَلَا حَبَّةٍ فِي ظُلْمَتِ الْأَرْضِ وَلَا رَطْبٍ وَلَا يَابِسٍ إِلَّا فِي كِتَابٍ مُبِينٍ ﴾

*"And with Him are the keys of the Ghaib (all that is hidden), none knows them but He. And He knows whatever there is in the land and in the sea; not a leaf falls, but he knows it. There is not a grain in the darkness of the earth nor anything fresh or dry, but is written in a Clear Record."*<sup>2</sup>

Mankind did not have this all-encompassing knowledge and had never thought about these things let alone having the ability to do it. If a group of scientists observe a plant or insect and they record their findings and discoveries we all become dazzled with that, though we know that what is hidden from these scientists in this plant or insect is more than what they observe in it.

The French scholar Maurice Bucaile has made a comparison between Torah, the Gospel and the Qur'aan and between modern

<sup>1</sup> Al-Mu'minoon 23:12-14.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:59.

scientific discoveries concerning the creation of the heavens, the earth and man and found out that these modern discoveries agree with what is in the Qur'aan. On the other hand, he found out that the Torah and the Gospel that are in circulation today contain many erroneous information about the creation of the heavens, the earth, man and animals.<sup>1</sup>

### **B. The Prophetic Sunnah:**

Allaah revealed the Qur'aan to the Messenger and revealed to him like thereof which is the Prophetic Sunnah that explains the Qur'aan. The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "Indeed, I am given the Qur'aan and its like with it."<sup>2</sup> Allaah has permitted him to explain the general and particular verses of the Qur'aan. Allaah says,

﴿ وَأَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الذِّكْرَ لِتُبَيِّنَ لِلنَّاسِ مَا نُزِّلَ إِلَيْهِمْ وَلَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَفَكَّرُونَ ﴾

*"And We have also sent down unto you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) the Dhikr (reminder and the advice (i.e. the Qur'ân)) that you may explain clearly to men what is sent down to them, and that they may give thought."<sup>3</sup>*

The Sunnah is the second source of the religion of Islaam. It means all that is reported from the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, – with well-connected and authentic chain of transmitters – of his sayings, deeds, confirmations and qualities. It is also a revelation from Allaah to His Messenger Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, for the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, did not speak of his own desire. Allaah says,

---

<sup>1</sup> See: "The Torah, the Bible and the Qur'aan in the light of modern science" by Maurice Bucaille p. 133-283. He was a Christian revert.

<sup>2</sup> Ahmad and Aboo Dawood.

<sup>3</sup> An-Nahl 16:44.

﴿ وَمَا يَنْطِقُ عَنِ الْهَوَىٰ ۗ إِنْ هُوَ إِلَّا وَحْيٌ يُوحَىٰ ۗ عَلَّمَهُ شَدِيدُ الْقُوَىٰ ۗ ﴾

"Nor does he speak of (his own) desire. It is only a Revelation revealed. He has been taught (this Qur'ân) by one mighty in power (Jibrîl (Gabriel))"<sup>1</sup>

The Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, only conveys to people what he is commanded to convey. Allaah says about him,

﴿ إِنْ أَتَيْتُ إِلَّا مَا يُوْحَىٰ إِلَيَّ وَمَا أَنَا إِلَّا نَذِيرٌ مُّبِينٌ ﴾

"I only follow that which is revealed to me, and I am but a plain warner."<sup>2</sup>

The pure Sunnah is the practical implementation of the rules, beliefs, acts of worship, kinds of relationship and manners that Islaam enjoins. The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, exemplified what he was commanded, explained it to the people and commanded them to do like he did. He says, for instance, "Pray as you see me praying."<sup>3</sup>

The All-Mighty Allaah has commanded the believers to emulate him in all his deeds and sayings in order that their faith might be complete. He says,

﴿ لَقَدْ كَانَ لَكُمْ فِي رَسُولِ اللَّهِ أُسْوَةٌ حَسَنَةٌ لِّمَن كَانَ يَرْجُوا اللَّهَ وَالْيَوْمَ الْآخِرَ وَذَكَرَ

اللَّهَ كَثِيرًا ﴾

<sup>1</sup> An-Najm 53:3-5.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Ahqaaf 46:9.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Bukhaaree.

*"Indeed in the Messenger of Allâh (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) you have a good example to follow for him who hopes for (the Meeting with) Allâh and the Last Day, and remembers Allâh much."*<sup>1</sup>

The Prophet's noble companions transmitted his sayings and deeds to those who came after them, and these also transmitted them to those who came after them. It was then recorded in the books of Sunnah. The Sunnah transmitters had been strict with those from whom they transmitted it and would make a condition that they be contemporaries of those from whom they themselves reported that Sunnah, till the chain of transmission would be connected right from the narrator to the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him.<sup>2</sup> They also made it a condition that all the men involved in the transmission must be trustworthy, just, sincere and people of integrity.

The Sunnah, as it is regarded as the practical implementation of Islaam, it also explains the Qur'aan, makes comments on it, and explains verses that have general meanings. The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, used to do all this, sometimes with his words, sometimes with his deeds and sometimes with both. The Sunnah may, in some cases, give independent explanations of some rules and legislations that are not in the Qur'aan.

One must have belief in the Qur'aan and Sunnah that they are the primary sources of the religion of Islaam that must be followed and turned to. The command of both must be obeyed, their prohibitions must be abstained from and their contents must be believed. One must also believe in what both contain of the Names, Attributes

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ahzaab 33:21.

<sup>2</sup> As a result of this unique academic methodology and accuracy and precision in transmitting the Sunnah, a science was introduced among the Muslims, that are known as 'ilmul-jarh wat-ta'deel' and 'ilm mustalahul-hadeeth'. The two sciences are among the exclusive qualities of the Muslims, which none possessed before them.

and Works of Allaah; what He has provided for His believing friends and that with which He threatened His disbelieving enemies. He says,

﴿ فَلَا وَرَبِّكَ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ حَتَّىٰ يُحَكِّمُوكَ فِيمَا شَجَرَ بَيْنَهُمْ ثُمَّ لَا يَجِدُوا فِي  
 أَنفُسِهِمْ حَرَجًا مِّمَّا قَضَيْتَ وَيُسَلِّمُوا تَسْلِيمًا ٦٥ ﴾

*"But no, by your Lord, they can have no Faith, until they make you (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) judge in all disputes between them, and find in themselves no resistance against your decisions, and accept (them) with full submission."*<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَمَا آتَاكُمُ الرَّسُولُ فَخُذُوهُ وَمَا نَهَاكُمْ عَنْهُ فَانْتَهُوا ﴾

*"And whatsoever the Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) gives you, take it; and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it)."*<sup>2</sup>

After giving an introduction about the sources of this religion, it is appropriate for us to discuss about its degrees which are: Islaam, Eemaan and Ihsaan. We are also going to talk on the pillars of these degrees in brief.

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:65.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Hashr 59:7.

## The First Degree<sup>1</sup>

Islaam: Its pillars are five, they are: Testifying that there is no deity worthy of worship but Allaah and that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is His Messenger; performing prayer, paying Zakaah, fasting in the month of Ramadaan and Pilgrimage.

**One: Testifying that there is no deity worthy of worship except Allaah and that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is His Messenger.**

The first part of the testimony means that, there is no rightful deity in the earth or in the heavens beside Him alone. He is the only true God and all deities besides Him are false ones.<sup>2</sup> It also means, purifying all acts of worship for Allaah alone and keeping them away from others beside Him. The utterer of this statement cannot benefit from it until he has two things:

1. To say it out of belief, knowledge, conviction and love for it.
2. To disbelieve in all that is worshipped besides Allaah. Whoever says this statement and does not disbelieve in all that is worshipped besides Allaah, this statement will not benefit him.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For more details see, "Kitaabut-Tawheed", "Al-Usooluth-Thalaathah", "Aadaabul-mashyi ilas-Salaah" by Shaykh Muhammad bin Abdul-Wahhab.

See also: "Deenul-Haqq" by Abdur-Rahmaan Al-Umar; "Maalaabudda min ma'rifatihi anil Islaam" by Muhammad bin 'Alee al-Arfaj; "Arkaanul Islaam" by Abdullah Al-Jaarallaah; "Sharh arkaanil Islaam wal Eemaan" by a group of students and reviewed by Shaykh Abdullaah Al-Jibreem.

<sup>2</sup> Deenul-Haqq p. 38.

<sup>3</sup> Qurratu 'uyoonul muwahhideen, p. 60.



Testifying that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is the Messenger of Allaah means, to follow him in all that he commands, to believe in all that he informs, to abstain from all that he prohibits and warns against and to worship Allaah with only what he legislates. One must also know and bear it in mind that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is Allaah's Messenger to all people, that he is only a slave of Allaah and should therefore not be worshipped, but rather be obeyed and followed, that whoever follows him enters Paradise and whoever disobeys him enters Fire. One must also know and bear it in mind that, Islaamic injunctions in matters of belief, acts of worship which are commanded by Allaah, system of law and matters of legislation and morals in area of building a family, or in area of allowing or forbidding things cannot be received except through this noble Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, for he is the Messenger of Allaah, who conveys His Law to mankind.<sup>1</sup>

## **Two: Prayer.<sup>2</sup>**

Prayer is the second pillar of Islaam. It is rather the pillar of Islaam, for it is the link between man and his Lord. He repeats it five times in a day with which he renews his faith, purifies himself from stains of sins and which stands between him and obscene things and sins. When he wakes up from sleep in the morning, he appears in front of his Lord pure and clean before he starts engaging in matters of this world. He magnifies his Lord, affirms His absolute right to be worshipped by prostrating, standing and bowing for Him five times each day.

Before he starts performing this prayer, he must purify his heart, body, clothes and place of his prayer. The Muslim must perform this prayer congregationally with his fellow Muslims – if that is easy for him – while they all face their Lord with their hearts and face the honoured Ka'abah, the House of Allaah with their faces. Prayer has

---

<sup>1</sup> For more details, read, "Kayfiyyatul Salaatin-Nabiyy" by Shaykh bin Baaz.

<sup>2</sup> Deenul-Haqq p. 51-52.

been prescribed in the best form in which the Creator requires His creation to worship Him; for it contains His glorification with all parts of the body; from word of the tongue, deeds of the hands, legs, head, senses and all other parts of his body; each part taking his share of this great act of worship.

The senses and limbs take their portion from it and the heart also takes its share. Prayer comprises of exaltation of Allaah, praising Him, glorifying Him, extolling Him. It also contains giving the testimony of the truth, recitation of the Qur'aan, standing in front of the Lord Who controls him, then humiliating oneself for Him in this position by begging Him with devotion and seeking His nearness. He then goes to bowing position, prostration and then sits down, all in submission, humility and showing helplessness for His greatness and His Might. The heart of this slave becomes broken, his body becomes humble and all his limbs surrenders with humility to his Lord. He then concludes his prayer with giving thanks to Allaah and praising Him, and invoking peace and blessings on His Prophet, Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, and finally asks his Lord of the good things of this world and the Hereafter.<sup>1</sup>

### **Three: Zakaah<sup>2</sup>**

Zakaah – obligatory charity – is the third pillar of Islaam. It is compulsory on the rich Muslims to pay Zakaah from his wealth. It is a very little part of his wealth that he gives to the poor and needy and others among those who are entitled to it.

Muslims must pay Zakaah to its due recipients willingly. He should neither remind the recipient of that nor harm him in whatever way on account of it. He must pay it seeking for the pleasure of Allaah; not desiring by that any recompense or thanks from men. He

---

<sup>1</sup> For more, read "Risaalataani fiz-zakaati was-siyaam" by Shaykh Ibn Baz.

<sup>2</sup> Miftaah daar as-sa'aadah 2:384.

should rather pay it for the sake of Allaah not for showing off or for any fame.

Paying Zakaah brings blessings and gladdens the hearts of the poor, the destitute and the needy. It prevents them from begging and it is a compassion on them and protection against negligence and poverty that could have afflicted them if they are left by the wealthy. Paying Zakaah when it is due is a quality of generosity, magnanimity, altruism, philanthropy and compassion. It also means freeing one self from traits of stingy, avaricious and valueless people. It is by Zakaah that Muslims support one another, that the wealthy shows mercy on the poor, so that there will not remain in the community – if this rite is properly implemented - a poor destitute, a subdued debtor or a traveller who has no more provisions with him.

#### **Four: Fasting**

It is to fast in the month of Ramadaan from the dawn to the sunset. The fasting Muslim abandons food, drink, sexual intercourse and similar things as an act of worship for Allaah and curbs his own soul from fulfilling its desires. Allaah has relieved the sick, the traveller, the pregnant woman, the nursing mother and a woman who has just delivered a baby from fasting. He ordained for each of them rules that suit him or her.

In this month, a Muslim curbs his own self from his desires and this act of worship will bring his soul out of the animal-like world to the world similar to that of angels who are near to Allaah. The situation of a fasting Muslim may reach a stage that he thinks like someone who has no need in this world more than to achieve the pleasure of Allaah.

Fasting enlivens the heart, makes one renounce the world, encourages one to seek what is with Allaah, and reminds the wealthy of the poor ones and their conditions so that their hearts may have sympathy for them and know that they are living in the favour of Allaah and therefore should increase in gratitude to him.

Fasting purifies the soul and creates in it the fear of Allaah. It makes individuals and the society feel the control of Allaah on them in bliss and hardship and in public and secret; where the society spends a whole month observing this act of worship and being conscious of its Lord; while being spurred by the fear of Allaah, the Exalted, by a belief that Allaah knows what is hidden and secret, that man will inevitably stand before Him a day in which He will ask him about all his deeds: minor and major.<sup>1</sup>

### **Five: Hajj<sup>2</sup>**

Pilgrimage to the House of Allaah in Makkah is obligatory on every Muslim who is adult, sane and capable; who possesses or can afford to hire means of transportation to Makkah and also possesses what is sufficient for him to live on throughout his journey with a condition that his provision should be an excess of the provision of those who are his dependants. He should also be sure that the road is safe and must ensure security of his dependants while he is away. Hajj is compulsory once in the lifetime for whoever is able to perform it.

One who intends to do Hajj should repent to Allaah in order that his soul can be free from filth of sins. When he reaches Makkah and other holy sites, he carries out the rites of hajj as an act of worship and glorification for Allaah. He must know that the Ka'abah as well as other sites should not be worshipped beside Allaah, for they neither benefit nor harm. He should also know that had Allaah not commanded the Muslims to embark on pilgrimage to that House, it would not have been proper for any Muslim to do that.

In pilgrimage, the pilgrim wears two white garments. The Muslims gather from all parts of the world at one place, wearing one garment and worshipping One God; with no difference between the

---

<sup>1</sup> See "Miftaah daar as-sa'aadah" 2, p. 384.

<sup>2</sup> For detailed reading see: "Daleelul-Hajj wal mu'tamir" by a group of scholars and "Explanations in many issues pertaining to Hajj and Umrah" by Shaykh Ibn Baz.

leader and the led; the rich and the poor; the white and the black. All are creatures of Allaah and his slaves. There is no superiority for a Muslim over another Muslim except by piety and good deeds.

By Hajj, Muslims achieve cooperation and mutual recognition, they remember the Day that Allaah will raise all of them up and gather them at a single place for reckoning, they thereby prepare for what is after death through acts of obedience to Allaah.

### **Worship in Islaam:<sup>1</sup>**

It is to worship Allaah in meaning and reality. Allaah is the Creator and you are the creature; you are the slave and He is the One that you worship. If that is the case, man must then follow the Straight Path of Allaah in this life and follow His Law and the Path of his Messengers. Allaah has ordained great laws for His slaves like belief in His Oneness, performing prayers, paying Zakaah, observing fasting and performing Hajj.

However, the above mentioned are not the only acts of worship in Islaam. Worship in Islaam is more comprehensive. It is all that Allaah loves and is pleased with of deeds and sayings, apparent or hidden. So, every work or saying that you do or say that Allaah loves and He is pleased with is worship. Even, every good habit that you do with an intention to please Allaah is worship. Your good relationship with your father, family, spouse, children and neighbours if you seek by that the pleasure of Allaah is worship. Your good conduct at home, in the market and office, done for the sake of Allaah is worship. Fulfilling the trust, being truthful and just, abstention from harming others, giving assistance to the weak, earning from lawful means, spending for family and children, consoling the poor, visiting the sick, feeding the hungry and aiding the wronged are all acts of worship if done for the sake of Allaah. So, all deeds that you do either for yourself, family or the society or your country in which you intend to win the pleasure of Allaah are acts of worship.

---

<sup>1</sup> See "Al-uboodiyyah" by Shaykhul Islaam Ibn Taymiyyah.

Even to fulfil your personal passion in a lawful way is worship if you do that with a good intention. The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "Even if anyone of you satiates his sexual desires, that is an act of charity."

The companions said, "O Messenger of Allaah! Would any of us satiate his own lust and still get a reward?"

He answered, "Tell me, if he had done that in an unlawful way would not he have sinned? Likewise, if he does it in a lawful way, he would get a reward."<sup>1</sup>

The Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, also said, "Every Muslim must pay charity."

He was asked, "How if he does not find what to pay charity with?"

He said, "He works with his two hands benefits himself by that and then pay charity."

He was asked again, "But how if he is not able?"

He said, "He should assist the needy who is wronged."

He was again asked, "But how if he is not able?"

He answered, "He enjoins all that is good."

And he was asked once more, "But how, if he is not able to do that?"

He answered, "He refrains from doing evil, for that also is for him, an act of charity."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Muslim.

## The Second Degree<sup>2</sup>

Faith and its six pillars: Belief in Allaah, His angels, His Books, His Messengers, belief in the Last Day and belief in pre-decree.

### First: Belief in Allaah.

You must believe in His Lordship; that He is the Lord, the Creator, the Possessor and the Controller of all things. You must also believe in His right to be worshipped, that He is the only True Deity, that all deities besides Him are false. You must believe in His Names and Attributes, that He has Beautiful Names and perfect Sublime Attributes.

You must also believe in His Oneness in all that. You must believe that He has no partner in His Lordship, nor in His right to be worshipped or in His Names and Attributes. He says,

﴿ رَبُّ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَمَا بَيْنَهُمَا فَاعْبُدْهُ وَاصْطَبِرْ لِعِبَادَتِهِ ۗ هَلْ تَعْلَمُ لَهُ

سَمِيًّا ﴿

*"Lord of the heavens and the earth, and all that is between them, so worship Him (Alone) and be constant and patient in His worship. Do you know of any who is similar to Him? (of course none is similar or co-equal or comparable to Him, and He has none as*

<sup>1</sup> Bukhaaree and Muslim.

<sup>2</sup> For more, read, "Sharh usool al-eeman" by Ibn 'Uthaymeen; "Kitaabul eemaan" by Ibn Taymiyyah; "Aqeedatul ahlissunnah waljamaa'ah" by Ibn 'Uthaymeen.

partner with Him). (There is nothing like unto Him and He is the All-Hearer, the All-Seer).<sup>1</sup>

You must also believe that neither slumber nor sleep overtakes Him; that He knows all that is hidden and evident; and that to him belongs the sovereignty of the heavens and the earth. He says,

﴿ وَعِنْدَهُ مَفَاتِحُ الْغَيْبِ لَا يَعْلَمُهَا إِلَّا هُوَ وَيَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ وَمَا تَسْقُطُ مِنْ وَرَقَةٍ إِلَّا يَعْلَمُهَا وَلَا حَبَّةٍ فِي ظِلْمَتِ الْأَرْضِ وَلَا رَطْبٍ وَلَا يَابِسٍ إِلَّا فِي كِتَابٍ مُبِينٍ ﴾

*"And with Him are the keys of the Ghaib (all that is hidden), none knows them but He. And He knows whatever there is in the land and in the sea; not a leaf falls, but he knows it. There is not a grain in the darkness of the earth nor anything fresh or dry, but is written in a Clear Record."<sup>2</sup>*

You must also believe that He – may He be exalted – rose high over His Throne above His creation, and that He is with them by His knowledge and He knows their conditions, hears their utterances, sees their places and controls their affairs. He provides for the poor, gives relief to the dejected, gives authority to whom He wills, withdraws it from whom He wills and that He is Able to do all things.<sup>3</sup>

Among the benefits of belief in Allaah are the following:

1. It lets man love Allaah and glorify Him and as such carry out His commandments and abstain from all that He forbids. If man

<sup>1</sup> Maryam 19:65.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:59.

<sup>3</sup> See: " 'Aqeedatul ahlissunnah waljamaa'ah " p. 7, 11.



does that, he attains perfect happiness in this world and the Hereafter.

2. Belief in Allaah creates in the mind self-esteem and dignity, for through it, man will know that it is only Allaah who is the True Possessor of all that is in this universe, that there is no bringer of harm or benefit except Him. This knowledge makes him dispenses of all that is besides Allaah and removes from his heart the fear of others besides Allaah and he will not hope except for Allaah and will not fear except Him alone.

3. Belief in Allaah creates humbleness in the heart; for man will know that whatever favour he has is from Allaah. Satan will not be able to deceive him, nor will he become overbearing and arrogant or boast with his power or wealth.

4. The believer in Allaah will have certain knowledge that there is no way to success and salvation except through good deeds that please Allah. Some people, however have false belief that Allaah commanded that His son be crucified as an atonement for the sins of mankind; some have a belief in false deities believing that these will do for them what they want while actually they can neither benefit nor harm; while some are atheists, who do not believe in the existence of Creator at all. All these beliefs are mere wishful thoughts; for when those who hold these beliefs meet Allaah on the Day of Resurrection and they see the reality, they will realise that they have been in clear error.

5. Belief in Allaah creates in man great power of determination, courage, perseverance, steadfastness and trust in Allaah when he struggles in lofty matters in this world to achieve the pleasure of Allaah. He will be on perfect certainty that he is putting his trust in the Possessor of the heavens and the earth and that He will help him and guide him. He will then be firm like mountains in his patience, steadfastness and in his trust in Allaah.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See: 'Aqeedatul ahlissunnah wajamaa'ah p. 44 and Mabadiul Islam p. 80, 84.

**Two: Belief in the angels:**

A Muslim must believe in the angels, that, it is Allaah Who created them and describes them as,

﴿ عِبَادٌ مُّكْرَمُونَ ﴿٦٦﴾ لَا يَسْبِقُونَهُ بِالْقَوْلِ وَهُمْ بِأَمْرِهِ يَعْمَلُونَ ﴿٦٧﴾ يَعْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ وَلَا يَحِطُّونَ إِلَّا لِمَنْ أَرَادَ أَنْ يُنْزِلَ مِنْ خَشْيَتِهِ مُشْفِقُونَ ﴿٦٨﴾ ﴾

*"They (whom they call children of Allâh i.e. the angels, 'Isa (Jesus) son of Maryam (Mary), 'Uzair (Ezra)) are but honored slaves. They speak not until He has spoken, and they act on His Command. He knows what is before them, and what is behind them, and they cannot intercede except for him with whom He is pleased. And they stand in awe for fear of Him."*<sup>1</sup>

In another description of the Angels, Allaah says,

﴿ لَا يَسْتَكْبِرُونَ عَنْ عِبَادَتِهِ، وَلَا يَسْتَحْسِرُونَ ﴿٦٩﴾ يُسَبِّحُونَ اللَّيْلَ وَالنَّهَارَ لَا يَفْتُرُونَ ﴿٧٠﴾ ﴾

*"They (i.e. the angels) are not too proud to worship Him, nor are they weary (of His worship). They (i.e. the angels) glorify His Praises night and day, (and) they never slacken (to do so)."*<sup>2</sup>

Allaah conceals them from our eyes, so that we do not see them. But Allaah sometimes shows some of them to some of His Prophets and Messengers.

<sup>1</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:26-28.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Anbiyaa 21:19-20.

Angels have functions assigned to them. Jibreel is assigned to Revelations which he brings from Allaah to whosoever He wishes of His Messengers. Among them is also an angel assigned to taking the souls, among them are those assigned to the foetuses in the wombs, among them are those assigned to the protection of mankind and among them are those assigned to recording of their deeds. Every person has two angels *“one sitting on the right and one on the left (to note his or her actions) not a word does he (or she) utter but there is a watcher by him (or her) ready (to record it)”*<sup>1</sup>

### **Benefits of belief in angels**

1. It purifies the belief of the Muslim from stains of polytheism; for when a Muslim believes in the existence of angels whom Allaah assigns with these great functions, he will be free from belief in the existence of imaginary creatures that some people claim have a share in the running of the affairs of the universe.
2. It lets the Muslims know that, the angels neither benefit nor harm, but that they are honoured slaves, who disobey not Allaah when He commands them but rather do what they are commanded. He will not worship them, nor direct his affairs to them or depend on them.

### **Three: Belief in the Books**

To believe that Allaah revealed Books to his Prophets and Messengers, in order to explain the truth and call to it. Allaah says,

﴿ لَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا رُسُلَنَا بِالْبَيِّنَاتِ وَأَنْزَلْنَا مَعَهُمُ الْكِتَابَ وَالْمِيزَانَ لِيَقُومَ النَّاسُ بِالْقِسْطِ ﴾<sup>١</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Qaaf 50:17-18.

*"Indeed, We have sent Our Messengers with clear proofs, and revealed with them the Scripture and the Balance (justice), that mankind may keep up justice."*<sup>1</sup>

These Books are many. Among them are the Scripture of Prophet Ibraaheem, the Torah of Prophet Moosaa, the Psalms given to Prophet David and the Gospel which was brought by Prophet Jesus Christ, may peace be upon all of them.

Belief in the Previous Books lies in believing that it is Allaah Who revealed them to His Messengers and that they contained the Law that Allaah wanted to be conveyed to people at that time.

All these Books, which Allaah informs us about have all become extinct. The scripture of Abraham does no longer exist. As for the Torah, the Gospel and the Psalms, even though they do exist by name in the hands of Jews and Christians, they have become altered, interpolated and adulterated and many of their original contents are missing. That which are not part of them have been included in them, and they are attributed to those who are not their authors. The Old Testament for instance, has more than forty books, and only five of them were attributed to Moses. As for the existing gospels of today, nothing of them is attributed to Jesus. The last Book revealed by Allaah is the Qur'aan which was revealed to Prophet Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him. It has always been and still is protected and preserved by Allaah. No change or alteration has crept into any of its letters, words, vowels or meanings.

The Qur'aan is different from all previous Books in many ways:

1. The past Books have been lost; changes and interpolations have crept into them; they have been attributed to those who are not their rightful owners; many commentaries and exegesis have been added to them and they contain many things that contradict Divine Revelation, the reason and nature. As for the Qur'aan, it is

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hadeed 57:25.

still being protected by Allaah, with its letters and words in which Allaah revealed them to Muhammad. Neither alteration nor addition has crept into it; for Muslims have been eager to let the Qur'aan remain free from all defects. They do not mix it with anything from the Prophet's life history, or the history of his companions or commentaries of the Qur'aan or rules pertaining to acts of worship and human relations.

2. Today, there is no known historical authority for the ancient books. Even, nothing was known about those on whom some of them were revealed or in which language they were revealed. Some of them are even attributed to others beside those who actually brought them.

As for the Qur'aan, Muslims have transmitted it from Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, in a successive manner, verbally and in written form. And at every age and country, there are thousands of Muslims who know this Book by heart as there are thousands of its copies as well. If the oral copies do not agree with written copies, the divergent copies will not be recognised; for what is in the memories of people should always be in agreement with what is in the written copies.

Above all, the Qur'aan was transmitted orally in a way that nothing of the books of this world had enjoyed. Even this particular method of transmission cannot be found except among Muslims alone. The methodology of preserving the Qur'aan goes this way: The student learns the Qur'aan by heart at the hand of his teacher; who had in turn learnt it by heart at the hand of his own teacher. The teacher also gives the student a certificate called "*Ijaazah*" in which the teacher testifies that he taught the student what he himself learnt from his own teachers one after another, each and everyone of these teachers will name his teacher from whom he learnt the Qur'aan in succession till the chain reaches the Messenger of Allaah himself. This is how the chain of teachers go in oral succession till it reaches the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him.

There exist many strong evidences and historical proofs – with connected chains of transmitters – on the knowledge of every soorah and every verse of the Qur'aan as regards where it was revealed and when it was revealed to Muhammad.

3. The languages in which past Books were revealed had become extinct since a long time. No one in this age speaks the languages and very few people can now understand them. As for the language in which the Qur'aan was revealed, it is a living language spoken today by tens of millions of people. It is taught and studied in every country of the world. Even the one who does not study it will find everywhere those who can teach him the meaning of the Qur'aan.

4. Each of the previous Books was meant for a particular time and sent to a particular nation; that was why it contained rules that were peculiar to that nation and that time. Whatever book that has these characteristics is not suitable for all mankind.

As for the Great Qur'aan, it is a Book meant for all times and all places. It comprises of ordainments, rules on how humans should relate with one another and manners that are suitable for every age; for it is addressed to mankind in general.

In view of the above, it becomes clear that it is not possible that Allaah's proof against humanity should be in books whose original copies no longer exist and whose languages no one in the world of today speaks, after they have been altered. Allaah's proof against His creation should be in a Book, protected and safe from addition, defect or alteration. Its copies should be spread in every place and written with a living language that is read by millions of people, who can convey the Message of Allaah to all mankind. This Book is the Magnificent Qur'aan which Allaah revealed to Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, and that is the witness over all the previous Books and it confirms them – before they were interpolated. It is the Book that all mankind must follow, so that, it can be for them, light, healing, guidance and mercy. Allaah says,

﴿ وَهَذَا كِتَابٌ أَنْزَلْنَاهُ مُبَارَكٌ فَاتَّبِعُوهُ وَاتَّقُوا لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُونَ ﴾

"And this is a blessed Book (the Qur'ân) which We have sent down, so follow it and fear Allâh (i.e. do not disobey His Orders), that you may receive mercy (i.e. be saved from the torment of Hell)."<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ قُلْ يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ إِنِّي رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِلَيْكُمْ جَمِيعًا ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "O mankind! Verily, I am sent to you all as the Messenger of Allâh."<sup>2</sup>

#### **Four: Belief in the Messengers**

To believe that Allaah sent Messengers to His creation in order to give them glad tidings of Paradise if they believe in Allaah and believe in the Messengers, and to warn them of punishment if they disobey. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ بَعَثْنَا فِي كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ رَسُولًا أَنِ اعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ وَاجْتَنِبُوا الطَّاغُوتَ ﴾

"And verily, We have sent among every Ummah (community, nation) a Messenger (proclaiming): "Worship Allâh (Alone), and avoid (or keep away from) Tâghût (all false deities, etc. i.e. do not worship Tâghût besides Allâh)."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:155.

<sup>2</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:158. For all the above, see: Al-Aqeedatu-s-saheehah p. 17; Aqeedatu ahlis-sunnah waljamaa'ah p. 22; Mabaadiul Islaam p. 89.

<sup>3</sup> An-Nahl 16:36.

He also says,

﴿رُسُلًا مُّبَشِّرِينَ وَمُنذِرِينَ لِئَلَّا يَكُونَ لِلنَّاسِ عَلَى اللَّهِ حُجَّةٌ بَعْدَ الرُّسُلِ﴾

*"Messengers as bearers of good news as well as of warning in order that mankind should have no plea against Allâh after the (coming of) Messengers."*<sup>1</sup>

These Messengers are many. The first of them was Noah and the last of them is Muhammad. There are many among them, those whom Allaah told us stories about like Abraham, Moses, Jesus, David, John, Zakariah and Saleh. There are also some about whom Allaah tells us nothing. Allaah says,

﴿وَرُسُلًا قَدْ قَصَصْنَاهُمْ عَلَيْكَ مِنْ قَبْلُ وَرُسُلًا لَمْ نَقْصُصْهُمْ عَلَيْكَ ۗ وَكَلَّمَ اللَّهُ

مُوسَىٰ تَكْلِيمًا ﴿١٦٤﴾﴾

*"And Messengers We have mentioned to you before and Messengers We have not mentioned to you."*<sup>2</sup>

All these Messengers were humans created by Allaah. They possessed nothing of the qualities of Lordship or Godship. Therefore, no act of worship should be directed to them; for they could avail themselves of any harm or benefit. Allaah says about Prophet Noah that he said,

﴿وَلَا أَقُولُ لَكُمْ عِنْدِي خَزَائِنُ اللَّهِ وَلَا أَعْلَمُ الْغَيْبَ وَلَا أَقُولُ إِنِّي مَلَكٌ﴾

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:165.

<sup>2</sup> An-Nisaa 4:164.



"And I do not say to you that with me are the Treasures of Allâh, nor that I know the Ghaib (unseen), nor do I say I am an angel."<sup>1</sup>

Allaah also commanded Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, to say,

﴿ قُلْ لَا أَقُولُ لَكُمْ عِنْدِي خَزَائِنُ اللَّهِ وَلَا أَعْلَمُ الْغَيْبَ وَلَا أَقُولُ لَكُمْ إِنِّي مَلَكٌ ﴾

"Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "I don't tell you that with me are the treasures of Allâh, nor (that) I know the Unseen; nor I tell you that I am an angel."<sup>2</sup>

And to say,

﴿ قُلْ لَا أَمْلِكُ لِنَفْسِي نَفْعًا وَلَا ضَرًّا إِلَّا مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ ﴾

Say (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "I possess no power of benefit or hurt to myself except as Allâh will"<sup>3</sup>

The Prophets are therefore honoured slaves, whom Allaah chose and honoured with the Message and described as His slaves. Their religion is Islaam and Allaah will not accept any other religion besides it. Allaah says,

﴿ إِنَّ الدِّينَ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ الْإِسْلَامُ ﴾

"Truly, the religion with Allâh is Islâm."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Hood 11:31.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:50.

<sup>3</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:188.

<sup>4</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:19.

The basic messages of the Prophets were one but their Laws differ. Allaah says,

﴿ لِكُلِّ جَعَلْنَا مِنْكُمْ شِرْعَةً وَمِنْهَا جَا ﴾

*"To each among you We have prescribed a Law and a clear way."*<sup>1</sup>

The final of all these Laws is that of Muhammad. It abrogates all other previous laws. His Message is the last of all Divine Messages and he is the last of all Messengers. Whoever believes in a Prophet among them should believe in all of them and whoever denies anyone of them has denied all of them; for all Prophets and Messengers call to the belief in Allaah, His angels, His Books, His Messengers and the Last Day and because their religion is one. So, he who disbelieves in others has disbelieved in all of them; for every one of them called to belief in all Prophets and Messengers.<sup>2</sup> Allaah says,

﴿ ءَامَنَ الرَّسُولُ بِمَا أُنزِلَ إِلَيْهِ مِنْ رَبِّهِ وَالْمُؤْمِنُونَ كُلٌّ ءَامَنَ بِاللَّهِ وَمَلَائِكَتِهِ  
وَكُتُبِهِ وَرُسُلِهِ لَا نُفَرِّقُ بَيْنَ أَحَدٍ مِنْ رُسُلِهِ ﴾

*"The Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) believes in what has been sent down to him from his Lord, and (so do) the believers. Each one believes in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, and His Messengers. They say, "We make no distinction between one another of His Messengers."<sup>3</sup>*

He also says,

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:48.

<sup>2</sup> See: Al-Aqeedatus-saheehah p. 17; Aqeedatu ah lus-sunnah waljamaa'ah p. 25.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Baqarah 2:285.

﴿ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَكْفُرُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَرُسُلِهِ وَيُرِيدُونَ أَنْ يُفَرِّقُوا بَيْنَ اللَّهِ وَرُسُلِهِ وَيَقُولُوا نُؤْمِنُ بِبَعْضٍ وَنَكْفُرُ بِبَعْضٍ وَيُرِيدُونَ أَنْ يَتَّخِذُوا بَيْنَ ذَلِكَ سَبِيلًا ﴿١٥١﴾ أُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْكَافِرُونَ حَقًّا وَأَعْتَدْنَا لِلْكَافِرِينَ عَذَابًا مُّهِينًا ﴿١٥٢﴾ ﴾

*"Verily, those who disbelieve in Allâh and His Messengers and wish to make distinction between Allâh and His Messengers (by believing in Allâh and disbelieving in His Messengers) saying, "We believe in some but reject others," and wish to adopt a way in between. They are in truth disbelievers. And We have prepared for the disbelievers a humiliating torment."*<sup>1</sup>

#### **Five: Belief in the Last Day:**

Since death is, inevitably, the end of every being in this world, what then is the fate of man after death? What is the end of the unjust people who escaped the punishment in this world? Will they escape the consequence of their injustices? What about the righteous people who missed their share of the reward of this world, are their rewards going to be wasted?

Indeed, mankind shall continue to die, generation after generation, until when Allaah gives His permission that this world should come to an end and all creatures on the face of the earth die. Allaah will thereafter resurrect all creatures in a day that will be witnessed by all; a day in which Allaah will gather all former and later generations. He will then call men to account for all their deeds either good or bad which they had earned in the world. The believers will be led to Paradise and the disbelievers will be marched to Fire.

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:150-151.

Paradise is the abode of peace which He has prepared for His believing friends. There are in it all kinds of bliss which no one can describe. It has degrees and every degree will have dwellers according to the degree of their belief in Allaah and their obedience to Him. The lowest in degree of the dwellers of Paradise in bliss will be equal to tenfold of the Kingdom of one of the kings of this world.

Hell is the abode of punishment which Allaah has prepared for him who disbelieves in Him. It has all kinds of torment whose mere mention is terrifying. If Allaah will allow anyone to die in the Hereafter the dwellers of the Fire will certainly die at mere sight of it.

Allaah knows – by His Pre-Knowledge – what every man will do or say of good or evil, secretly or publicly. He assigned to every man two angels: one records his good deeds and the other his evil ones and nothing escapes them. Allaah says,

﴿ مَا يَلْفِظُ مِنْ قَوْلٍ إِلَّا لَدَيْهِ رَقِيبٌ عَتِيدٌ ﴿١٨﴾ ﴾

*"Not a word does he (or she) utter, but there is a watcher by him ready (to record it)."*<sup>1</sup>

All his deeds will be recorded in a book that will be given to man on the Day of Resurrection. Allaah says,

﴿ وَوُضِعَ الْكِتَابُ فَتَرَى الْمُجْرِمِينَ مُشْفِقِينَ مِمَّا فِيهِ وَيَقُولُونَ يَا وَيْلَتَنَا مَا لِ هَذَا الْكِتَابِ لَا يُغَادِرُ صَغِيرَةً وَلَا كَبِيرَةً إِلَّا أَحْصَاهَا ۗ وَوَجَدُوا مَا عَمِلُوا حَاضِرًا ۗ وَلَا يَظْلِمُ رَبُّكَ أَحَدًا ﴿١٧﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Qaaf 50:18.

"And the Book (one's Record) will be placed (in the right hand for a believer in the Oneness of Allâh, and in the left hand for a disbeliever in the Oneness of Allâh), and you will see the Mujrimûn (criminals, polytheists, sinners), fearful of that which is (recorded) therein. They will say: "Woe to us! What sort of Book is this that leaves neither a small thing nor a big thing, but has recorded it with numbers!" And they will find all that they did, placed before them, and your Lord treats no one with injustice."<sup>1</sup>

The man will then read his record and will not deny anything therein and whosoever denies anything of his deeds, Allaah will give power of speech to his ears, eyes, hands, legs and skin, so that they could contradict him. Allaah says,

﴿ وَقَالُوا لِحُلُودِهِمْ لِمَ شَهِدْتُمْ عَلَيْنَا ۗ قَالُوا أَنْطَقَنَا اللَّهُ الَّذِي أَنْطَقَ كُلَّ شَيْءٍ وَهُوَ خَلَقَكُمْ أَوَّلَ مَرَّةٍ وَإِلَيْهِ تُرْجَعُونَ ﴿١٠١﴾ وَمَا كُنْتُمْ تَسْتَتِرُونَ أَنْ يَشْهَدَ عَلَيْكُمْ سَمْعُكُمْ وَلَا أَبْصَارُكُمْ وَلَا جُلُودُكُمْ وَلَكِنْ ظَنَنْتُمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَعْلَمُ كَثِيرًا مِمَّا تَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١٠٢﴾ ﴾

"And they will say to their skins, "Why do you testify against us?" They will say: "Allâh has caused us to speak - He causes all things to speak: and He created you the first time, and to Him you are made to return. And you have not been hiding yourselves (in the world), lest your ears, and your eyes, and your skins should testify against you; but you thought that Allâh knew not much of what you were doing."<sup>2</sup>

Belief in the Last Day<sup>3</sup> – Day of Resurrection – was preached by all Messengers and Prophets. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Al-Kahf 18:49.

<sup>2</sup> Fussilat 41:21-22.

<sup>3</sup> For more evidences about resurrection, see pages 84-90 of this book.

﴿ وَمِنْ آيَاتِهِ أَنْ تَرَى الْأَرْضَ خَاشِعَةً فَإِذَا أَنْزَلْنَا عَلَيْهَا الْمَاءَ اهْتَزَّتْ وَرَبَتْ إِنَّ  
الَّذِي أَحْيَاهَا لَمُحْيِ الْمَوْتَى إِنَّهُ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ﴿٤١﴾ ﴾

*"And among His Signs (in this), that you see the earth barren; but when We send down water (rain) to it, it is stirred to life and growth (of vegetations). Verily, He Who gives it life, surely, is Able to give life to the dead (on the Day of Resurrection). Indeed He is Able to do all things."<sup>1</sup>*

He also says,

﴿ أَوْلَمْ يَرَوْا أَنَّ اللَّهَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضَ وَلَمْ يَعْ يَخْلُقْهُنَّ بِقَدْرِ عَلَى  
أَنْ يُحْيِيَ الْمَوْتَى ﴾

*"Do they not see that Allāh, Who created the heavens and the earth, and was not wearied by their creation, is Able to give life to the dead?"<sup>2</sup>*

This is what the Divine Wisdom necessitates; for Allaah did not create His creation in vain or leave them for fun. The weakest person in intelligence cannot carry out any important action without having a purpose for it. How can this not be imagined in case of man and then think that Allaah only created His creation for fun and that He shall leave them in vain. Far and Highly Exalted is Allaah above all that they say. Allaah says,

﴿ أَفَحَسِبْتُمْ أَنْمَّا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ عَبَثًا وَأَنْكُمْ إِلَيْنَا لَا تُرْجَعُونَ ﴿٥٣﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Fussilat 41:39.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Ahqaaf 46:33.

"Do you think that We had created you in play (without any purpose) and that you would not be brought back to Us?"<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَمَا خَلَقْنَا السَّمَاءَ وَالْأَرْضَ وَمَا بَيْنَهُمَا بَطْلًا ۚ ذَٰلِكَ ظَنُّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا ۚ فَوَيْلٌ لِلَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا مِنَ النَّارِ ﴿١٠٠﴾ ﴾

"And We created not the heaven and the earth and all that is between them without purpose! That is the assumption of those who disbelieve! Then woe to those who disbelieve (in Islâmic Monotheism) from the Fire."<sup>2</sup>

All wise men testify to the necessity of belief in the Last Day; for that's what the intelligence and reason necessitate and what the sound human nature agrees to. When man believes in the Day of Resurrection, he knows why he should abstain from what he is ordered to leave and do what he is ordered to do, hoping for what is with Allaah. He will also know that, he who does injustice to people will inevitably have his recompense and that those he wrongs will take revenge on him on the Day of Resurrection. He will also know that man must have a reward: good reward for good deeds and commensurate punishment for evil deeds, so that each soul shall be rewarded for what it strived for and Divine Justice can be established. Allaah says,

﴿ فَمَنْ يَعْمَلْ مِثْقَالَ ذَرَّةٍ خَيْرًا يَرَهُ ﴿٢٥٤﴾ وَمَنْ يَعْمَلْ مِثْقَالَ ذَرَّةٍ شَرًّا يَرَهُ ﴿٢٥٥﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Mu'minoon 23:115.

<sup>2</sup> Saad 38:27.

*"So whoever does an atom weight of good shall see it; and whoever does an atom weight of evil shall see it."*<sup>1</sup>

No one among mankind knows when the Day of Resurrection will come. This is a Day that is known to neither a sent Prophet nor a favoured Angel. Allaah keeps the knowledge of that to Himself alone. He says,

﴿ يَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ السَّاعَةِ أَيَّانَ مُرْسِنُهَا قُلْ إِنَّمَا عِلْمُهَا عِنْدَ رَبِّي لَا يُجَلِّيهَا لِوَقْتِهَا إِلَّا هُوَ ﴾

*"They ask you about the Hour (Day of Resurrection): 'When will be its appointed time?' Say: 'The Knowledge thereof is with my Lord. None can reveal its time but He.'*"<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

﴿ إِنَّ اللَّهَ عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ السَّاعَةِ ﴾

*"Verily Allâh, with Him (Alone) is the knowledge of the Hour."*<sup>3</sup>

### **Six: Belief in Pre-decree:**

You must believe that Allaah knows what happens and what shall happen; that He knows the conditions, deeds, life spans and provisions of His slaves. He says,

﴿ إِنَّ اللَّهَ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَلِيمٌ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Az- Zalzalah 99:7-8.

<sup>2</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:187.

<sup>3</sup> Luqmaan 31:34.



"Verily, Allâh is the All-Knower of everything."<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿ وَعِنْدَهُ مَفَاتِحُ الْغَيْبِ لَا يَعْلَمُهَا إِلَّا هُوَ وَيَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ وَمَا تَسْقُطُ مِنَ زَرْقٍ إِلَّا يَعْلَمُهَا وَلَا حَبَّةٍ فِي ظُلْمَتِ الْأَرْضِ وَلَا رَطْبٍ وَلَا يَابِسٍ إِلَّا فِي كِتَابٍ مُبِينٍ ﴾

*"And with Him are the keys of the Ghaib (all that is hidden), none knows them but He. And He knows whatever there is in the land and in the sea; not a leaf falls, but he knows it. There is not a grain in the darkness of the earth nor anything fresh or dry, but is written in a Clear Record."*<sup>2</sup>

He registers all that in a Record with Him. He also says,

﴿ وَكُلَّ شَيْءٍ أَحْصَيْنَاهُ فِي إِمَامٍ مُبِينٍ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-'Ankaboot 29:62.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:59. Had not there been in the Qur'aan but only this verse, it would have been enough as a clear evidence and decisive proof that it is from Allaah; for mankind, in all their ages – even in this age, where knowledge is widespread and man grows arrogant – have not thought of this comprehensive encompassment, let alone having the ability to do any of that. The highest extent to which their efforts could carry them is to closely observe a tree or insect in a particular environment, in order to reveal to us a part of its mysteries. But what is hidden from them in that tree or insect is greater. As for comprehensive think and encompassment, it is a matter that mankind have not known or have the ability to know.

"And all things We have recorded with numbers (as a record) in a Clear Book."<sup>1</sup>

He says,

﴿ أَلَمْ تَعْلَمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَعْلَمُ مَا فِي السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ إِنَّ ذَلِكَ فِي كِتَابٍ إِنَّ ذَلِكَ عَلَى اللَّهِ يَسِيرٌ ﴾

Know you not that Allâh knows all that is in heaven and on the earth? Verily, it is (all) in the Book (Al-Lauh Al-Mahfûz). Verily that is easy for Allâh.<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

﴿ إِنَّمَا أَمْرُهُ إِذَا أَرَادَ شَيْئًا أَنْ يَقُولَ لَهُ كُنْ فَيَكُونُ ﴾

"Verily, His Command, when He intends a thing, is only that He says to it, 'Be' and it is!"<sup>3</sup>

As it is Allaah Who preordained all things, it is also He Who Created all things. He says,

﴿ إِنَّا كُلَّ شَيْءٍ خَلَقْنَاهُ بِقَدَرٍ ﴾

"Verily, We have created all things with Qadar (Divine Preordainments of all things before their creation, as written in the Book of Decrees Al-Lauh Al-Mahfûz)."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Yaa seen 36:12.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Hajj 22:70.

<sup>3</sup> Yaa seen 36:82.

He also says,

﴿اللَّهُ خَلِقُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ﴾

"Allâh is the Creator of all things."<sup>2</sup>

He created men in order to worship Him and made that clear to them. He commanded them to obey Him, forbidden them from disobeying Him and made that clear to them. He gave them power and will by which they could carry out the Commandments of Allaah and get reward; and by which they could perpetrate acts of disobedience, and get punished.

If man believes in the Divine Preordainment, he will achieve the following:

1. He will depend on Allaah while making use of the means; for he knows that the means and its causes are all by Divine Pre-decree of Allaah.
2. Peace of mind and tranquillity; for when he knows that it is Allaah Who gives that and that the preordained detestable thing shall happen no matter what, he will have rest of mind and he will be pleased with the decision of Allaah. There will not be anyone who will be more pleased and have more peace of mind than him Who believes in Divine Preordainment.
3. He will not be arrogant when he attains what he aims; for he will know that the attainment of that blessing is from Allaah through the means of good and success He has pre-decreed. He will therefore thank Allaah for that.
4. He will not be sad or distressed when the desired goal is missed or when the unwanted happens; because of his knowledge that it happens through irresistible Decree of Allaah. For no one can resist His Command or appeal His judgement. What he has

<sup>1</sup> Al-Qamar 54:49.

<sup>2</sup> Az-Zumar 39:62.

pre-decreed will inevitably happen. He will therefore be patient and get the reward thereof from Allaah. Allaah says,

﴿ مَا أَصَابَ مِنْ مُصِيبَةٍ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَلَا فِي أَنْفُسِكُمْ إِلَّا فِي كِتَابٍ مِّن قَبْلِ أَنْ نَبْرَأَهَا إِنَّ ذَلِكَ عَلَى اللَّهِ يَسِيرٌ ﴿٥١﴾ لِكَيْلَا تَأْسَوْا عَلَىٰ مَا فَاتَكُمْ وَلَا تَفْرَحُوا بِمَا ءَاتَاكُمْ ۗ وَاللَّهُ لَا يُحِبُّ كُلَّ مُخْتَالٍ فَخُورٍ ﴿٥٢﴾ ﴾

*"No calamity befalls on the earth or in yourselves but is inscribed in the Book of Decrees (Al-Lauh Al-Mahfûz), before We bring it into existence. Verily, that is easy for Allâh. In order that you may not grieve at things that you fail to get, nor rejoice over that which has been given to you. And Allâh likes not prideful boasters. ."<sup>1</sup>*

5. Complete dependence on Allaah. For the Muslim knows that, it is only Allaah Who has the power to cause benefit or harm. He will then not fear any powerful person because of his power and will not hesitate to do good deeds out of fear of any man. The Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, told Ibn Abbaas: "Know that if all mankind are unanimous on benefiting you, they cannot benefit you with anything except with that which Allaah has pre-decreed for you. If they are also unanimous on harming you, they cannot harm you except with that which Allaah has pre-decreed for you."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hadeed 57:22-23. See: Al-Aqeedah as-saheehah p. 19; Aqeedah ahlisunnah wal jamaa'ah p. 39 and Deenul Haqq p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Ahmad and At-Tirmidhee.

### The Third Degree

The third degree is "*Ihsaan*" (utmost sincerity and perfection in acts of worship). It implies which means that you worship Allaah as if you are seeing Him, and if you do not see Him, He sees you. One must worship his Lord with this quality. That is, to bear it in mind that Allaah is close to him; that he is standing before his Lord. This condition makes man have awe, fear and great honour for Allaah. It makes man sincere in acts of worship and gives him courage to strive more towards its perfection.

The slave is conscious of his Lord while observing act of worship and reminds himself of His nearness to him as if he is seeing Him. If he cannot do that, let him be conscious of the fact that Allaah sees him and knows his secret and public affairs, and that nothing is hidden from Him.<sup>1</sup>

The slave that has reached this stage worships his Lord sincerely, not looking to others besides Him. He neither expects people's praise nor fears their blame; for it is enough for him that his Lord is pleased with him and praises him. This is a man whose public and private deeds are the same. He worships his Lord in private and public with certain faith that Allaah knows all that is in his heart and goes on in his mind. The faith has overpowered his heart and the consciousness of his Lord is manifest on him; his limbs then surrender to Allaah; for he will not use them except in what pleases Allaah and in that which He loves and in submission to Him.

Since his heart has been attached to his Lord, he will not seek help from any creature, for Allaah suffices him; he will not complain to any man, for he has approached Allaah with his needs and enough is He as a Helper. He does not feel lonely in any place nor does he fear anyone, for he knows that Allaah is with him in all his conditions. He is enough for him and He is the Best Helper. He will not abandon any order that Allaah commands him to carry out and will not perpetrate any sin, for he is ashamed before Him and hates

---

<sup>1</sup> Jaamiul 'uloom wal-Hikam p. 128.

that He finds him wanting in what He Commands him to do or finds him where he forbids him. He will neither oppress nor wrong anyone or take anyone's right for he knows that Allaah is seeing him, and that He shall call him to account for all his deeds.

He will not cause mischief in the land; for he knows that all good things that are in the earth are properties of Allaah which He subjects for His Creation. He will take of these good things according to his needs and thank his Lord for facilitating them for him.

All that I have told you and presented to you in this booklet are only important matters and great pillars in Islaam. Whoever believes in these fundamentals and acts by them has become a Muslim. If not, Islaam – as I have told you – is both religion and worldly; a worship and a way of life. It is the comprehensive and perfect Divine Order that encompasses in its ordainments all that the individual and the society need in all aspects of their religious, political, economical, social and security life. Man will find therein principles, fundamentals and rules that regulate peace and war and binding duties; and preserves the dignity of man, bird, animals and the environment that surrounds him. They also explain to him the reality of man, the life and the death; and the Resurrection after death. He also finds in Islaam the best methodology of relating with people around him; such as the saying of Allaah,

﴿ وَقُولُوا لِلنَّاسِ حُسْنًا ﴾

*“And speak good to people”<sup>1</sup>*

And His saying,

﴿ وَالْعَافِينَ عَنِ النَّاسِ ﴾

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Baqarah 2:83.

*"And those who pardon men."*<sup>1</sup>

And His saying,

﴿ وَلَا يَجْرِمَنَّكُمْ شَنَاٰنُ قَوْمٍ عَلٰٓى اَلَّا تَعْدِلُوْٓا اَعْدِلُوْٓا هُوَ اَقْرَبُ لِلتَّقْوٰى ﴾

*"And let not the enmity and hatred of others make you avoid justice. Be just: that is nearer to piety; and fear Allâh."*<sup>2</sup>

After we have discussed the degrees of this religion and the fundamentals of each degree, it is appropriate that we discuss briefly the beauties of Islaam.

---

<sup>1</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:134.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:8.

## **Some of the Beauties of Islaam<sup>1</sup>**

The beauties of Islaam are beyond what pens can fully write and enough expressions cannot be found to describe the virtues of this religion; because it is the religion of Allaah. Just as the eye cannot encompass the perception of Allaah and man cannot encompass His Reality on Knowledge, so can the pen not encompass His Law in description. Ibn Al-Qayyim said, "If you reflect on the dazzling wisdom in this Upright Religion, this pure faith and the Law enacted for mankind, which no expression can perfectly describe, whose description cannot be perfected, the likeness of which the wisdom of the wise cannot propose – even if all wise men are to be as perfectly wise as the wisest one among them, whose beauty and virtues are perceived and attested to by the perfect and honourable intelligence, that the world had not known a law better and greater than it even if the Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, had not brought any proof in support of it, all that would have been enough an evidence that it is from Allaah. Every aspect of this religion shows perfect knowledge, perfect wisdom, expansiveness of mercy, righteousness and kindness, absolute inclusion of all that is hidden and manifest and the knowledge about the beginnings and ends. It also shows that it is one of the greatest favours that Allaah has bestowed on His slaves, for He bestows not on them a favour greater than the fact that He guided them to this religion, made them its adherents and chosen it for them. Hence, He reminds His slaves of the fact that He guided them to it. He says,

---

<sup>1</sup> For more detail on this section, read *Ad-Durratul mukhtasarah fee mahaasiniddeenil Islaamee*, by Shaykh Abdur-Rahmaan As-Sa'dee; and *Mahaasinul Islaam*, by Shaykh Abdul Azeez As-Salmaan.



﴿ لَقَدْ مَنَّ اللَّهُ عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِذْ بَعَثَ فِيهِمْ رَسُولًا مِّنْ أَنفُسِهِمْ يَتْلُوا عَلَيْهِمْ آيَاتِهِ  
وَيُزَكِّيهِمْ وَيُعَلِّمُهُمُ الْكِتَابَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ وَإِن كَانُوا مِن قَبْلُ لَفِي ضَلَالٍ مُّبِينٍ ﴾

*"Indeed Allâh conferred a great favor on the believers when He sent among them a Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) from among themselves, reciting unto them His Verses (the Qur'ân), and purifying them (from sins by their following him), and instructing them (in) the Book (the Qur'ân) and Al-Hikmah (the wisdom and the Sunnah of the Prophet (peace be upon him) (i.e. his legal ways, statements, acts of worship)) while before that they had been in manifest error."*<sup>1</sup>

He also says, making Himself known to His slaves, reminding them of His great favour on them, and calling them to thank Him for making them among its adherents,

﴿ الْيَوْمَ أَكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ دِينَكُمْ ﴾

*"This day, I have perfected your religion for you."*<sup>2</sup>

It is therefore part of showing gratitude to Allaah on this religion, to mention some of its beauties:

**1. It is the religion of Allaah** which He has chosen for Himself, sent with His Messengers and by which He allowed His slaves to worship Him. His religion is not comparable to human statutes and man-made religions. As Allaah possesses the quality of absolute perfection, so does His religion has an absolute perfection in providing ordainments that reform the worldly and eternal life of mankind; encompasses the rights of the Creator and obligations of

<sup>1</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:164.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Maaidah 5:3, See: Miftaahu daaris Sa'aadah V. 1, p. 374-375.

His slaves towards Him; obligations of one towards another and the rights of each one of them upon another.

**2. Comprehensiveness:** One of the most prominent beauties of this religion is that it takes care of every aspect of human life. Allaah says,

﴿ مَا فَرَّطْنَا فِي الْكِتَابِ مِنْ شَيْءٍ ﴾

*"We have neglected nothing in the Book."*<sup>1</sup>

This religion encompasses all that has to do with the Creator like His Names, Attributes and rights; and all that has to do with the creatures like laws, obligations, manners and relationship. This religion also encompasses the stories of former and latter generation, stories of angels, Prophets and Messengers. It tells about the heaven, the earth, the orbits, the planets, seas, trees and the universe. It mentions the goal and aim of creation and its end; talks about Paradise and the final abode of the believers and Fire and the final abode of disbelievers.

**3. It links man to his Creator:** Every false religion and creed has the character of linking man with another man that is prone to death, weakness, incapacity and diseases. Some even link man to a person who has died since hundreds of years ago and had become mere bones and dust. Islaam, on the other hand, has the quality of linking man to his Creator directly; with no priest nor reverend and no holy secret. If this direct connection between the Creator and the created; a connection that links the heart with its Lord and it thereby gets light, guidance and loftiness; seeks for perfection; and deems itself high above insignificant and debased things. For every heart that has no link with its Lord is more erroneous than animals.

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:38.

It is a communication between the Creator and the creature by which he knows the wish of his Creator and then worship Him with the knowledge, and gets to know things that please Him and seek for that, and things that annoys Him and shun them. It is a communication between the All-Mighty Creator and the weak and destitute creature, that enables him seek for aid, assistance and success from Him, and ask Him for protection against evil planners and evil deeds of devils.

**4. It caters for the benefits of this world and those of the Hereafter.** The Islaamic Law is based on protection of the benefits of this world and the Hereafter and on perfection of good morals. As for the explanation of the benefits of the Hereafter, the religion of Islaam has explained all that and left nothing of it untaken care of. It explains it in detail so that nothing of it may be unknown. Islaam promises the bliss in the Hereafter and warns against its torment.

Concerning the benefits of this world, Allaah ordained in this religion what can protect for man his religion, life, property, posterity, dignity and intelligence.

Concerning honourable conducts, Islaam enjoins that overtly and covertly and forbids debasing manners. Among the apparent noble conducts that Islaam enjoins are cleanliness and purification from all kinds of impurities and dirt. Islaam recommends using of perfume and outward adornment; it forbids filthy behaviours like adultery and fornication, consuming alcohol; eating dead animals, blood and pork flesh, and enjoins eating of lawful good things. It also prohibits wastefulness and extravagance.

As for inner purification, Islaam prohibits undesirable conducts and encourages commendable ones. Among the forbidden manners are: lies, obscenity, anger, jealousy, stinginess, debasing oneself, love of prestige and this world, arrogance, haughtiness and hypocrisy. Among the commended behaviours are: good conduct, good companionship to all people and being kind to them, justice and fairness, humility, truthfulness, magnanimity, generosity,

dependence on Allaah, sincerity in acts of worship, fear of Allaah, patience and showing gratitude.<sup>1</sup>

**5. Easiness:** Easiness is one of the unique qualities of this religion. In every ritual is easiness and in every act of worship is easiness. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَا جَعَلْ عَلَيْكُمْ فِي الدِّينِ مِنْ حَرَجٍ ﴾

*"He has not laid upon you in religion any hardship"*<sup>2</sup>

The first easiness in Islaam is that; anyone who wants to become a Muslim does not need a human intermediary or a confession of past sins. He only needs to cleanse himself and utter the statement: I testify that there is no deity worthy of worship except Allaah and I testify that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is the Messenger of Allaah; and to believe in the meanings of this statement and act by its implications.

Further, every worship in Islaam is characterised by easiness and alleviation. If a man travels or is sick, the reward of the deed that he used to do when he was at home or healthy will continue to be recorded to his credit. The whole life of the Muslim is easy and filled with tranquillity, while the life of a disbeliever is conversely filled with hardship and toil. Also, the death of a Muslim is easy where his soul comes out of his body as a drop of water comes out of a vessel. Allaah says,

---

<sup>1</sup> See: Al-'I'laam bima' fee deen-in-nasa'araa minal fasaad wal-awhaam, by Al-Qurtubee p. 442-445.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Hajj 22:78

﴿ الَّذِينَ تَتَوَفَّيهِمُ الْمَلَائِكَةُ طَيِّبِينَ يَقُولُونَ سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكُمْ ادْخُلُوا الْجَنَّةَ بِمَا كُنْتُمْ تَعْمَلُونَ ﴾

"Those whose lives the angels take while they are pious saying (to them): peace be on you, enter Paradise because of that (the good) which you used to do (in the world)."<sup>1</sup>

As for the disbeliever, the stern and harsh angels will be present at his death beating him with lashes. Allaah says about the disbeliever,

﴿ وَلَوْ تَرَىٰ إِذِ الظَّالِمُونَ فِي غَمَرَاتِ الْمَوْتِ وَالْمَلَائِكَةُ بَاسِطُوا أَيْدِيهِمْ أَخْرَجُوا أَنفُسَكُمْ الْيَوْمَ تُجْزَوْنَ عَذَابَ الْهُونِ بِمَا كُنْتُمْ تَقُولُونَ عَلَى اللَّهِ غَيْرَ الْحَقِّ وَكُنْتُمْ عَنْ آيَاتِهِ تَسْتَكْبِرُونَ ﴾

"And if you could but see when the Zâlimûn (polytheists and wrong-doers) are in the agonies of death, while the angels are stretching forth their hands (saying): "Deliver your souls! This day you shall be recompensed with the torment of degradation because of what you used to utter against Allâh other than the truth. And you used to reject His Ayât (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.) with disrespect!"<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> An-Nahl 16:32.

<sup>2</sup> Al-An'aam 6:93.

﴿ وَلَوْ تَرَىٰ إِذِ اتَّخَذُوا آلَمَلِيكَةَ يَضْرِبُونَ وُجُوهُهُمْ وَأَدْبِرَهُمْ  
وَذُوقُوا عَذَابَ الْحَرِيقِ ﴾

*"And if you could see when the angels take away the souls of those who disbelieve (at death); they smite their faces and their backs (saying): Taste the punishment of the blazing Fire."*<sup>1</sup>

**6. Justice:** The one who ordains the Islaamic injunctions is Allah alone. He is the Creator of all people: black and white, male and female. Men are equal before His judgement, justice and mercy. He ordains rules that suits each of the male and female. It then becomes impossible that the Law of Islaam favours male at the expense of female or gives female preference and do injustice to male. Islaam also does not endow white man with qualities and deny that to the black man. All are equal before the Laws of Allaah and no difference between them except by piety.

**7. Enjoining all that is good and forbidding all that is evil:** The religion of Islaam has noble characteristics, which is enjoining all that is good and forbidding all that is evil. This duty is incumbent on every male or female Muslim who is an adult, sane and able to enjoin and forbid according to his or her ability and according to the degrees of the enjoining and prohibition. He or she should command or forbid with hand, if not able to do so then with the tongue and if not able then with the heart. By this all members of the Muslim community will be supervisors in the community.

Every individual should command whoever is negligent to do good deed, and forbid whoever does wrong to desist, be he either a ruler or ruled; each according to his ability and in accordance with Islamic regulations that control this matter.

This matter – as you can see – is compulsory upon individual according to his ability. Compare this to what the contemporary

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Anfaal 8:50.

political orders proudly claim that they give opportunity to opposition parties to monitor the government activities and carry out official functions.

These are some of the beauties of Islaam. Had I wanted to go into details, I would have stopped at every rite, every obligation, every commandment and every prohibition in order to explain the extensive wisdom, decisive ordainment, impressive, unique and matchless perfection that lie therein. Whoever ponders over the ordainments of this religion, he will know with certainty that it is from Allaah and that it is the truth that is free of any doubt and a guidance from error. If you therefore want to go back to Allaah, to follow His Law and to follow the path of His Prophets and Messengers, the door of repentance is open before you and your Lord is Oft-Forgiving, Most –Merciful. He calls you in order to forgive you.

## Repentance

The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "All children of Adam do commit sins and the best of the sinners are those who repent."<sup>1</sup>

Man by nature is weak; he is weak in his aim and resolution and is unable to bear the consequences of his sins and misdeeds. So Allaah out of kindness, makes matters easy for man and He prescribed for him repentance.

The essence of repentance is to abandon the sin because of its ugliness – out of fear for Allaah– and out of desire for His Mercy; to regret over what one has done, to determine not to go back to the sin again and to spend whatever is left of one's life in good deeds.<sup>2</sup> As you can see, repentance is a deed of the heart that is only between the slave and his Lord. It is not a difficult job for him. It is just a deed of the heart: to abandon the sin, and not to go back to it. There is actually well-being and peace of mind in abstaining from all that Allaah forbids."<sup>3</sup>

You do not need to repent at the hand of a man who will reveal your secret and manipulate your weakness. It is only a communication between you and your Lord; you seek His forgiveness and guidance and He forgives you. There is nothing like inherited sin in Islaam, nor is there anything like an expected mankind saviour. Islaam, is as discovered by the Austrian Jewish revert to Islaam, Muhammad Asad who said, "I could not find it anywhere in the Qur'aan any mention of man's need for salvation. In Islaam, there is no concept of the first inherited sin that stand between man and his fate, because,

---

<sup>1</sup> Ahmad, At-Tirmidhee and Ibn Maajah.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Mufradaat fee ghareebil Qur'aan, p. 76, quoted freely.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Fawaaid by Ibn Al-Qayyim.



﴿ لَيْسَ لِلْإِنْسَانِ إِلَّا مَا سَعَى ﴾

*'Man can have nothing but what he does (good or bad).'*<sup>1</sup>

Islaam does not require from man to present a sacrifice or kill himself in order to have the door of repentance opened for him and to be saved from sins."<sup>2</sup> Allaah says,

﴿ أَلَا تَرَىٰ وَازِرَةً وَّرَآءَ أُخْرَىٰ ﴾

*"No burdened person (with sins) shall bear the burden (sins) of another."*<sup>3</sup>

Repentance has great benefits and impacts, some of which are:

1. It makes man know expansiveness of Allaah's forbearance, and magnanimity in concealing his misdeeds. Had He willed, He would have hastened to punish him and disgraced him in front of people so that he would not be able to live comfortably with them. But Allaah honoured him by concealing for him his sins, covered him by His forbearance and endowed him with energy, provision and sustenance.
2. It lets him know his real self, that it is inclined to evil and that whatever comes from it of sins, misdeeds or negligence is an indication from forbidden desires, and that, it cannot dispense of Allaah – for even a twinkle of an eye – for its purification and guidance.
3. Allaah prescribes repentance in order to seek with it the greatest causes of happiness for man, which is creating refuge with Allaah and seeking His assistance; and also to bring about different kinds of supplication; showing one's submission,

<sup>1</sup> An-Najm 53:39.

<sup>2</sup> Road to Islaam by Muhammad Asad p. 140.

<sup>3</sup> An-Najm 53:38

helplessness to Allaah, showing one's love to Allaah, one's fear of and hope in Him; then the soul moves closer to its Creator in a special way which will not occur to it without repentance and escaping to Allaah.

4. It makes Allaah forgive him his past sins. Allaah says,

﴿ قُلْ لِلَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا إِنْ يَنْتَهُوا يُغْفَرْ لَهُمْ مَا قَدْ سَلَفَ ﴾

*"Say to those who have disbelieved, if they cease (from disbelief) their past will be forgiven."<sup>1</sup>*

5. Repentance turns one's evil deeds to good ones. Allaah says,

﴿ إِلَّا مَنْ تَابَ وَآمَنَ وَعَمِلَ عَمَلًا صَالِحًا فَأُولَٰئِكَ يُبَدِّلُ اللَّهُ سَيِّئَاتِهِمْ

حَسَنَاتٍ ۗ وَكَانَ اللَّهُ غَفُورًا رَحِيمًا ﴾

*"Except those who repent and believe (in Islâmic Monotheism), and do righteous deeds; for those, Allâh will change their sins into good deeds, and Allâh is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful."<sup>2</sup>*

6. It makes man treat his fellow humans, when they harm him, as he would love Allaah to treat him as regards his own misdeeds and sins; for recompense is in accordance with the type of deed. So, if he treats people in this good manner, he will also be treated by Allaah in the like manner and Allaah will be kind to him regardless of his evil deeds and sins, just as he does with his fellow human beings.

7. It enables him to know that he is full of faults and defects; this will make him refrain from speaking about the faults of other people

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-Anfaal 8:38.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Furqaan 25:70.

and will be preoccupied with reforming his own self instead of thinking about the faults of others.<sup>1</sup>

I would like to conclude this section with the story of a man who came to the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, and said, "O Messenger of Allaah! I have not left any small or big sin but I had committed it."

The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "Don't you testify that there is no other deity worthy of worship except Allaah and that Muhammad, blessings and peace be upon him, is the Messenger of Allaah?"

He asked him this question three times and the man answered each time, "Yes."

He then said, "your testimony has erased all that (you have committed of sins)"<sup>2</sup>

In another narration, the man came to the Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, and said, "Tell me! If a man committed all sins but has not associated anything in worship with Allaah, and yet did not leave any small or big sin uncommitted, can his repentance be accepted?"

The Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, asked the man, "have you embraced Islaam?"

The man answered, "As for me, I testify that there is no deity worthy of worship except Allaah, that He is One and has no partner and that you are the Messenger of Allaah."

---

<sup>1</sup> Muftaahu daaris-sa'aadah, Vol. 1, p. 358-370.

<sup>2</sup> Reported by Aboo Ya'laa; At-Tabaraanee; and Al-Maqdisee.

The Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "Yes! Do good deeds and refrain from evil ones, so that Allaah may turn all those evil deeds to good ones for you."

The man said, "Even my acts of treachery and my sins?!"

The Prophet, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "Yes."

The man said, "Allaahu Akbar (Allaah is the Most-Great) and he kept on saying that until he disappeared."<sup>1</sup>

**Islaam therefore erases whatever sin one might have committed and sincere repentance also erases whatever sin one might have committed as authentically reported from the Prophet, blessings and peace of Allaah be upon him.**

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Abee 'Aasim; At-Tabaraanee and Al-Bazzaar.

### Repercussions of Rejecting Islaam

As it has been made clear to you in this book that Islaam is the religion of Allaah, that it is the true religion; that it was the one preached by all Prophets and Messengers; Allaah has prepared great reward in this world and the Hereafter for whoever believes in it and threatened whoever disbelieves in it with severe torment.

Since Allaah is the Creator, the Possessor and Disposer of this entire universe, and you, man, are just one of His creatures; He created you, and subjected to you all that is the universe, ordained His Law for you and commands you to obey Him. If you therefore believe, obeys His Commandment and abstain from all that He forbids you, you will attain what He promises you of the everlasting bliss in the Hereafter and you will be happy in this world with all that He will endow on you of all kinds of favours; you will then be like the wisest men and the purest of them in soul; the Prophets, Messengers, righteous people and the favoured angels.

But if you disbelieve, and disobey your Lord; you will lose your worldly life and your Hereafter and expose yourself to His wrath and punishment in this world and the Hereafter. You will then be like the most wicked of all creatures, the most defective in intelligence and the most debased in mind: the devils, corrupt people and false deities and transgressors, just to mention a few.

Let me now tell you something of the consequences of disbelief in detail:

**1. Fear and lack of security:** Allaah promises complete security in this world and the Hereafter for those who believe in Him and follow His Messengers. He says,

﴿ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَلَمْ يَلْبِسُوا إِيمَانَهُمْ بِظُلْمٍ أُولَٰئِكَ لَهُمُ الْأَمْنُ وَهُمْ مُهْتَدُونَ ﴾

*"It is those who believe (in the Oneness of Allâh and worship none but Him Alone) and confuse not their belief with Zulm (wrong i.e. by worshipping others besides Allâh), for them (only) there is security and they are the guided."*<sup>1</sup>

Allaah is the Giver of security, the Watcher over His creatures, the Possessor of all that is in the universe. If He loves a slave of His because of his belief, He gives him security, tranquillity and peace, but if a slave of His disbelieves in Him, He withdraws tranquillity and security from him and you will not see such a person but afraid of his fate in the Hereafter, afraid for his own self from calamities and diseases and afraid for his future in this world. That is why the insurance market insures lives and properties for lack of security and lack of having trust in Allaah.

**2. Difficult life:** Allaah created man, subjected to him all that is in the universe and portion out for every creature his share of sustenance and lifespan. Hence you see the bird going out of its nest to look for its provision and then picks it. It moves from a branch of the tree to another and sings in most melodious tone. Man is also one of these creatures for whom Allaah has portioned out his provision and lifespan. If he therefore believes in his Lord and stands firm on His Law, Allaah will give him happiness and stability and He will make his matters easy for him, even if he does not possess more than the least means of livelihood.

If he however disbelieves in his Lord and feels too big to worship Him, He will make his life straitened and make him suffer from sorrow and distress even if he has all means of comfort and enjoyment at his disposal. Don't you see the great numbers of suicide victims in countries in which all means of affluence are guaranteed for their citizens? Don't you see all kinds of furniture and mats used for the enjoyment of this life? The cause of all this extravagance is the vacuity of the heart from faith, feeling of constraint and hardship and an attempt to dismiss all these worries with all different means. Allaah says and truth really is His Word,

---

<sup>1</sup> Al-An'aam 6:82.

﴿ وَمَنْ أَعْرَضَ عَن ذِكْرِي فَإِنَّ لَهُ مَعِيشَةً ضَنْكًا وَنَحْشُرُهُ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ أَعْمَى ﴾



"But whosoever turns away from My Reminder (i.e. neither believes in this Qur'ân nor acts on its teachings.) verily, for him is a life of hardship, and We shall raise him up blind on the Day of Resurrection."<sup>1</sup>

### 3. Life in perpetual war with self and the world around:

This is because; man's soul is created upon Islaamic Monotheism. Allaah says,

﴿ فِطْرَتَ اللَّهِ الَّتِي فَطَرَ النَّاسَ عَلَيْهَا ﴾

"Allâh's Fitrah (i.e. Allâh's Islâmîc Monotheism) with which He has created mankind."<sup>2</sup>

Man's body surrenders to its Lord and it moves according to His order. The disbeliever, however, insists on going against his own nature, and living his voluntary life in rebellion against his Lord. Although his body surrenders to the will of the Creator, his own voluntary will is in opposition to the will of his Lord.

He will be in constant war with the world around him in the sense that, all this universe right from its greatest galaxy to its smallest insect, moves according to the way which Allaah has ordained for it. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Taa Haa 20:124.

<sup>2</sup> Ar-Room 30:30

﴿ ثُمَّ اسْتَوَىٰ إِلَى السَّمَاءِ وَهِيَ دُخَانٌ فَقَالَ لَهَا وَلِلْأَرْضِ ائْتِيَا طَوْعًا أَوْ كَرْهًا قَالَتَا أَتَيْنَا طَائِعِينَ ﴿٥١﴾ ﴾

"Then He (rose over) Istawâ towards the heaven when it was smoke, and said to it and to the earth: "Come both of you willingly or unwillingly." They both said: "We come, willingly.' "

The universe loves him who agrees with it in submission to Allaah and hates him who opposes it. The disbeliever is the recalcitrant in this universe for he makes himself an opponent to his Lord and contender with Him. That is why it is appropriate for the heavens and the earth and all other creatures to hate him and his disbelief and atheism. Allaah says,

﴿ وَقَالُوا اتَّخَذَ الرَّحْمَنُ وَلَدًا ﴿٥٢﴾ لَقَدْ جِئْتُمْ شَيْئًا إِدًّا ﴿٥٣﴾ تَكَادُ السَّمَوَاتُ يَتَفَطَّرْنَ مِنْهُ وَتَنْشَقُّ الْأَرْضُ وَتَخِرُّ الْجِبَالُ هَدًّا ﴿٥٤﴾ أَنْ دَعَوْا لِلرَّحْمَنِ وَلَدًا ﴿٥٥﴾ وَمَا يَنْبَغِي لِلرَّحْمَنِ أَنْ يَتَّخِذَ وَلَدًا ﴿٥٦﴾ إِنْ كُلُّ مَنْ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ إِلَّا آتِي الرَّحْمَنِ عَبْدًا ﴿٥٧﴾ ﴾

"And they say: "The Most Gracious (Allâh) has begotten a son (or offspring or children) (as the Jews say: 'Uzair (Ezra) is the son of Allâh, and the Christians say that He has begotten a son ('Iesa (Christ) (peace be upon him)) and the pagan Arabs say that He has begotten daughters (angels and others.))" Indeed you have brought forth (said) a terrible evil thing. Whereby the heavens are almost torn, and the earth is split asunder, and the mountains fall in ruins, That they ascribe a son (or offspring or children) to the Most Gracious (Allâh). But it is not suitable for (the Majesty of) the Most Gracious (Allâh) that He should beget a son (or offspring or

<sup>1</sup> Fussilat 41:11.



children). *There is none in the heavens and the earth but comes unto the Most Gracious (Allâh) as a slave.*"<sup>1</sup>

He says about Pharaoh and his hosts,

﴿ فَمَا بَكَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ السَّمَاءُ وَالْأَرْضُ وَمَا كَانُوا مُنظَرِينَ ﴾

*"And the heavens and the earth wept not for them, nor were they given a respite."*<sup>2</sup>

#### 4. A life of ignorance:

Disbelief is ignorance. It is rather the greatest ignorance; because the disbeliever is ignorant of his Lord. He sees this universe that was created by his Lord in the most wonderful way, he sees in himself the greatness of Allaah's deed and yet he is ignorant of the Creator of this universe and the Constructor of his own self; is this not the greatest ignorance?

#### 5. A life of one who wrongs oneself:

This is because; he subjected his own self to purposes other than that for which he was created. He does not worship his Lord but worship others. Injustice is to put a thing in a place to which it does not belong; and which type of injustice is greater than directing acts of worship to those who do not deserve them. Luqmaan has told his son while explaining the awfulness of polytheism,

﴿ يٰبُنَيَّ لَا تُشْرِكْ بِاللَّهِ إِنَّ الشِّرْكَ لَظُلْمٌ عَظِيمٌ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Maryam 19:88-93.

<sup>2</sup> Ad-Dukhaan 44:29.

*"O my son! Join not in worship others with Allâh. Verily joining others in worship with Allâh is a great Zûlm (wrong) indeed."*<sup>1</sup>

It is also injustice for the people and other creatures around him; because he does not acknowledge the right of Him to Whom right is due. On the Day of Resurrection, every man or animal he has wronged will stand before him asking Allaah to avenge for him.

### 6. Exposing oneself to Allaah's wrath:

He exposes himself to the calamities and afflictions as immediate punishment for his disbelief. Allaah says,

﴿ أَفَأَمِنَ الَّذِينَ مَكَرُوا السَّيِّئَاتِ أَنْ يَخْسِفَ اللَّهُ بِهِمُ الْأَرْضَ أَوْ يَأْتِيَهُمُ الْعَذَابُ مِنْ حَيْثُ لَا يَشْعُرُونَ ﴿١٥﴾ أَوْ يَأْخُذَهُمْ فِي تَقْلِبِهِمْ فَمَا هُمْ بِمُعْجِزِينَ ﴿١٦﴾ أَوْ يَأْخُذَهُمْ عَلَى تَخَوُّفٍ فَإِنَّ رَبَّكُمْ لَرَءُوفٌ رَحِيمٌ ﴿١٧﴾ ﴾

*"Do then those who devise evil plots feel secure that Allâh will not sink them into the earth, or that the torment will not seize them from directions they perceive not? Or that He may catch them in the midst of their going to and fro (in their jobs), so that there be no escape for them (from Allâh's punishment)? Or that He may catch them with gradual wasting (of their wealth and health). Truly! Your Lord is indeed full of Kindness, Most Merciful?"*<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> Luqmaan 31:13.

<sup>2</sup> An-Nahl 16:45-47.

﴿ وَلَا يَزَالُ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا نُصِيبُهُمْ بِمَا صَنَعُوا قَارِعَةً أَوْ نُحْلِقُ قَرِيبًا مِّن دَارِهِمْ حَتَّىٰ يَأْتِيَ وَعْدُ اللَّهِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُخْلِفُ الْمِيعَادَ ﴾ ﴿٥١﴾

"And a disaster will not cease to strike those who disbelieved because of their (evil) deeds or it settles close their homes, until the Promise of Allâh comes to pass. Certainly, Allâh breaks not His Promise."<sup>1</sup>

He says in another verse,

﴿ أَوَامِنَ أَهْلِ الْقُرَىٰ أَلَمْ يَأْتِيهِمْ بَأْسُنَا ضُحَىٰ وَهُمْ يَلْعَبُونَ ﴾ ﴿٥٢﴾

"Or did the people of the towns then feel secure against the coming of Our punishment in the forenoon while they were playing?"<sup>2</sup>

This is the fate of every man who turns away from Remembrance of Allaah. Allaah tells us of the punishments of past nations who were disbelievers,

﴿ فَكَلَّا أَخَذْنَا بِذُنُوبِهِمْ فَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ أَرْسَلْنَا عَلَيْهِ حَاصِبًا وَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ أَخَذَتْهُ الصَّيْحَةُ وَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ حَسَفْنَا بِهِ الْأَرْضَ وَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ أَغْرَقْنَا وَمَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُظْلِمَهُمْ وَلٰكِن كَانُوا أَنفُسَهُمْ يَظْلِمُونَ ﴾ ﴿٥٣﴾

"So We punished each (of them) for his sins; of them were some on whom We sent Hâsib (a violent wind with shower of stones) (as the people of Lût (Lot)) and of them were some who were overtaken by As-Saiyah (torment - awful cry. (as Thamûd or

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Ra'd 13:31.

<sup>2</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:98.

*Shu'aib's people)) and of them were some whom We caused the earth to swallow (as Qârûn (Korah)) and of them were some whom We drowned (as the people of Nûh (Noah), or Fir'aun (Pharaoh) and his people). It was not Allâh Who wronged them, but they wronged themselves."*<sup>1</sup>

**7. Failure and loss will be his lot:** Because of his wrong, he loses the greatest thing with which the hearts and souls enjoy, which is knowing Allaah, meditating in Him and feeling tranquillity with Him. He also loses the world, for he lives there a wretched and confused life and he loses his own soul for which he amasses the wealth of this world; for he subjects it for a purpose different from that which it was created for. He thereby does not attain with it happiness in this world, for he makes it lived in misery and caused it to die in misery and it shall be raised up among the miserable. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَنْ حَفَّتْ مَوَازِينُهُ فَأُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ خَسِرُوا أَنفُسَهُمْ يَمَا كَانُوا بِآيَاتِنَا يَظْلِمُونَ ﴾



*"And as for those whose scale will be light, they are those who will lose their own selves (by entering Hell) because they denied and rejected Our Ayât (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.)."*<sup>2</sup>

He will also lose his family, for he lived with them on disbelief in Allaah and they will also be like him in misery and hardship and their fate will be Fire. Allaah says,

﴿ إِنَّ الْخَاسِرِينَ الَّذِينَ خَسِرُوا أَنفُسَهُمْ وَأَهْلِيهِمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Al-Ankaboot 40:9.

<sup>2</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:9.

*"The losers are those will loose themselves and their families on the Day of Resurrection."<sup>1</sup>*

On the Day of Resurrection, they will be led to Fire, and evil is it as a resting place. Allaah says,

﴿ أَحْشُرُوا الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا وَأَزْوَاجَهُمْ وَمَا كَانُوا يَعْبُدُونَ ﴿١٠٠﴾ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ فَاهْدُوهُمْ إِلَى صِرَاطِ الْجَحِيمِ ﴿١٠١﴾ ﴾

*"(It will be said to the angels): "Assemble those who did wrong, together with their companions (from the devils) and what they used to worship instead of Allâh, and lead them on to the way of flaming Fire (Hell)."<sup>2</sup>*

**8. A life of disbelief in Allaah and denial of His favours:** Allaah created him from nothing and showered on him favours, how can he then worship, befriend and thank others besides Him? Which ingratitude is greater and more heinous than this?

**9. Being deprived of a real and purposeful life:** This is because the man who deserves life is the one who believes in his Lord, knows his goal, recognizes his fate and is certain of his resurrection. He thereby gives right to whom it is due. He does not suppress truth nor harm a creature. He then lives the life of happy people and attains good life in this world and the Hereafter. Allaah says,

﴿ مَنْ عَمِلَ صَالِحًا مِّنْ ذَكَرٍ أَوْ أُنْثَىٰ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ فَلَنُحْيِيَنَّهٗ حَيٰوةً طَيِّبَةً ﴿١٠٤﴾ ﴾

*"Whoever works righteousness - whether male or female - while he (or she) is a true believer (of Islâmic Monotheism) verily, to him We*

<sup>1</sup> Az-Zumar 39:15, Shooraa 42:45.

<sup>2</sup> As-Saaffaat 37:22-23.

will give a good life (in this world with respect, contentment and lawful provision)."<sup>1</sup>

And in the Hereafter, his reward will be,

﴿ وَمَسْكِنٌ طَيِّبَةٌ فِي جَنَّاتِ عَدْنٍ ۚ ذَٰلِكَ الْفَوْزُ الْعَظِيمُ ﴿١٢﴾ ﴾

"Pleasant dwellings in Eden Paradise; that is indeed, the great success."<sup>2</sup>

But whoever lives in this world like animals, such does not know his Lord or his goal and fate. His only aim is to eat, drink and sleep. What then is the difference between him and other animals? He is even in greater error than animals. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَقَدْ ذَرَأْنَا لِجَهَنَّمَ كَثِيرًا مِّنَ الْإِنسِ وَالْجِنِّ وَأَلْزَمُوا قُلُوبًا لَا يَفْقَهُونَ بِهَا  
وَهُمْ أَعْيُنٌ لَا يُبْصِرُونَ بِهَا وَهُمْ ءَاذَانٌ لَا يَسْمَعُونَ بِهَا أُولَٰئِكَ كَالْأَنْعَامِ بَلَّ هُمْ أَضْلُ  
أُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْغَافِلُونَ ﴿١٧١﴾ ﴾

"And surely, We have created many of the jinn and mankind for Hell. They have hearts wherewith they understand not, and they have eyes wherewith they see not, and they have ears wherewith they hear not (the truth). They are like cattle, nay even more astray; Those! They are the heedless ones."<sup>3</sup>

He also says,

<sup>1</sup> An-Nahl 16:97.

<sup>2</sup> As-Saff 61:12.

<sup>3</sup> Al-A'raaf 7:179.

﴿ أَمْ تَحْسَبُ أَنَّ أَكْثَرَهُمْ يَسْمَعُونَ أَوْ يَعْقِلُونَ ۚ إِنْ هُمْ إِلَّا كَالْأَنْعَامِ بَلْ هُمْ أَضَلُّ سَبِيلًا ﴿٢٥﴾ ﴾

"Or do you think that most of them hear or understand? They are only like cattle – nay, they are even further astray from the path."<sup>1</sup>

**10. Living in an infinite torment:** This is because the disbeliever moves from a torment to another. He goes out of this world – after he has tasted all its agonies and afflictions – to the Hereafter. In the first stage of the Hereafter, the angels of death come upon him and before them come the angels of torment who will give him his deserved punishment. Allaah says,

﴿ وَلَوْ تَرَىٰ إِذِ يَتَوَقَّى الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا الْمَلَائِكَةَ يَصْرُبُونَ وُجُوهَهُمْ وَأَدْبِرَهُمْ ﴾

"And if you could see when the angels take away the souls of those who disbelieve (at death); they smite their faces and their backs."<sup>2</sup>

Then his soul departs and when he is put in the grave, he meets a greater torment. Allaah says about the People of Pharaoh,

﴿ النَّارُ يُعْرَضُونَ عَلَيْهَا غُدُوًّا وَعَشِيًّا ۖ وَيَوْمَ تَقُومُ السَّاعَةُ أَدْخِلُوا آلَ فِرْعَوْنَ أَشَدَّ الْعَذَابِ ﴿٦١﴾ ﴾

The Fire, they are exposed to it, morning and afternoon. And on the Day when the Hour will be established (it will be said to the

<sup>1</sup> Al-Furqaan 25:44.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Anfaal 8:50.

angels): "Cause Fir'aun's (Pharaoh) people to enter the severest torment!"<sup>1</sup>

On the Day of Resurrection, when the creatures are raised up and the deeds are exposed and the disbeliever sees that Allaah has accurately enumerated all his deeds in that book about which He says,

﴿ وَوُضِعَ الْكِتَابُ فَتَرَى الْمُجْرِمِينَ مُشْفِقِينَ مِمَّا فِيهِ وَيَقُولُونَ يَا وَيْلَتَنَا مَا لِ هَذَا الْكِتَابِ لَا يُغَادِرُ صَغِيرَةً وَلَا كَبِيرَةً إِلَّا أَحْصَاهَا ﴾

*"And the Book (one's Record) will be placed (in the right hand for a believer in the Oneness of Allâh, and in the left hand for a disbeliever in the Oneness of Allâh), and you will see the Mujrimûn (criminals, polytheists, sinners), fearful of that which is (recorded) therein. They will say: "Woe to us! What sort of Book is this that leaves neither a small thing nor a big thing, but has recorded it with numbers!"*<sup>2</sup>

Here, the disbeliever will wish to be dust. Allaah says,

﴿ يَوْمَ يَنْظُرُ الْمَرْءُ مَا قَدَّمَتْ يَدَاهُ وَيَقُولُ الْكَافِرُ يَا لَيْتَنِي كُنْتُ تُرَابًا ﴾

*"The Day when man will see that (the deeds) which his hands have sent forth, and the disbeliever will say: 'Woe to me! Would that I were dust.'*<sup>3</sup>

Because of the horror of that Day, man will wish that he owns all that is in the earth, so that he can ransom himself with it from the torment of that Day. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> Ghaafir 40:46.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Ka'f 18:49.

<sup>3</sup> An-Naba 78:40.



﴿ وَلَوْ أَنَّ لِلَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا مَا فِي الْأَرْضِ جَمِيعًا وَمِثْلَهُ مَعَهُ لَافْتَدَوْا بِهِ ﴾

"And those who did wrong (the polytheists and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allāh), if they had all that is in earth and therewith as much again, they verily, would offer it to ransom."<sup>1</sup>

Allaah also says,

﴿ يُبْصِرُونَهُمْ<sup>٤</sup> يَوَدُّ الْمُجْرِمُ لَوْ يَفْتَدِي مِنْ عَذَابِ يَوْمِئِذٍ بَنِيهِ ﴿١٦﴾ وَصَحْبَتَيْهِ  
وَأَخِيهِ ﴿١٧﴾ وَفَصِيلَتِهِ الَّتِي تُؤْوِيهِ ﴿١٨﴾ ﴾

"The Mujrim, (criminal, sinner, disbeliever) would desire to ransom himself from the punishment of that Day by his children, and his wife and his brother, and his kindred who sheltered him, and all that are in the earth, so that it might save him."<sup>2</sup>

For, that abode is that of recompense and not of wishful thinking. Man must therefore, get a reward for his deed; if it is good he gets good reward and if it is evil, he gets rewarded with punishment. And the worst punishment that a disbeliever may meet on the Day of Resurrection is that of Fire in which Allaah has provided different kinds of retribution for its dwellers so that they can taste the torment of their deeds. Allaah says,

﴿ هَذِهِ جَهَنَّمُ الَّتِي يُكَذِّبُ بِهَا الْمُجْرِمُونَ ﴿١٧﴾ يَطُوفُونَ فِيهَا وَبَيْنَ حَمِيمٍ ءَانٍ ﴿١٨﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> Az-Zumar 39:47.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Ma'aarij 70:11-14.

"This is Hell which the Mujrimûn (polytheists, criminals, sinners) denied. They will go between it (Hell) and the fierce boiling water!."<sup>1</sup>

He also informs us of the garments of the dwellers of Hell,

﴿ فَالَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا قُطِعَتْ لَهُمْ ثِيَابٌ مِنْ نَارٍ يُصَبُّ مِنْ فَوْقِ رُءُوسِهِمُ الْحَمِيمُ ﴿٢٠﴾  
يُضْهَرُ بِهِ مَا فِي بُطُونِهِمْ وَالْجُلُودُ ﴿٢١﴾ وَهُمْ مَقْمُوعٌ مِنْ حَدِيدٍ ﴿٢٢﴾ ﴾

"As for those who disbelieved, garments of fire will be cut out for them, boiling water will be poured down over their heads. With it will melt (or vanish away) what is within their bellies, as well as (their) skins. And for them are hooked rods of iron (to punish them)."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Rahmaan 55:43-44.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Hajj 22:19-21.

### Conclusion

O man! You were before a non-existent. Allaah says,

﴿أَوَلَا يَذْكُرُ الْإِنْسَانُ أَنَّا خَلَقْنَاهُ مِن قَبْلُ وَلَمْ يَكُ شَيْئًا ﴿٧٦﴾﴾

"Does not man remember that We created him before while he was nothing?"<sup>1</sup>

Then He created you from a mixture of male and female discharge and made you hearing, seeing. Allaah says,

﴿هَلْ أَتَى عَلَى الْإِنْسَانِ حِينٌ مِّنَ الدَّهْرِ لَمْ يَكُن شَيْئًا مَّذْكُورًا ﴿١٩٠﴾ إِنَّا خَلَقْنَا الْإِنْسَانَ مِن نُّطْفَةٍ أَمْشَاجٍ نَّبْتَلِيهِ فَجَعَلْنَاهُ سَمِيعًا بَصِيرًا ﴿١٩١﴾﴾

"Has there not been over man a period of time, when he was not a thing worth mentioning? Verily, We have created man from Nutfa (drops) of mixed semen (sexual discharge of man and woman), in order to try him: so We made him hearer and seer."<sup>2</sup>

Then you moved gradually from a state of weakness to strength and you shall be returned to a state of weakness again. Allaah says,

﴿اللَّهُ الَّذِي خَلَقَكُمْ مِّن ضَعْفٍ ثُمَّ جَعَلَ مِن بَعْدِ ضَعْفٍ قُوَّةً ثُمَّ جَعَلَ مِن بَعْدِ قُوَّةٍ ضَعْفًا وَشَيْبَةً يَخْلُقُ مَا يَشَاءُ وَهُوَ الْعَلِيمُ الْقَدِيرُ ﴿٨٥﴾﴾

<sup>1</sup> Maryam 19:67.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Insan 77:1-2.

*"Allâh is He Who created you in (a state of) weakness, then gave you strength after weakness, then after strength gave (you) weakness and gray hair. He creates what He wills. And it is He Who is the All-Knowing, the All-Powerful (i.e. Able to do all things)."*<sup>1</sup>

Then the end is death and you, through these stages, move from weakness to weakness; you cannot avert evil from yourself nor can you bring about benefit for yourself except by using the strength and provision that Allaah gave you. You are, by nature, poor and needy. Many are the things that you need to keep you alive which you do not possess or which you sometimes have and sometimes are deprived of. Many are also those things that are useful to you and you would like to have and which you achieve sometimes and do not achieve other times. Many are things that harm you, ditch your hope, waste your efforts and bring on you tribulations and calamity which you would like to avert; and which you sometimes succeed in averting and which you fail sometimes to avert. In view of this, do you not feel your helplessness and your need to Allaah? Allaah says,

﴿ يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ أَنْتُمُ الْفُقَرَاءُ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَاللَّهُ هُوَ الْغَنِيُّ الْحَمِيدُ ﴿٥٤﴾ ﴾

*O mankind! it is you who stand in need of Allâh. But Allâh is Rich (Free of all needs), Worthy of all praise.*<sup>2</sup>

You are exposed to a weak virus which you cannot see with your naked eyes, and that causes you painful disease which you cannot prevent and you then go to a weak human being like yourself to treat you. Sometimes, the medicine works and sometimes the doctor fails to cure you and both you and your doctor then become confused.

<sup>1</sup> Ar-Room 30:54.

<sup>2</sup> Faatir 35:15.

O man! What a weak creature you are when the fly snatches something from you and you cannot take back from it! Allaah says the truth when He says,

﴿ يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ ضُرِبَ مَثَلٌ فَاستَمِعُوا لَهُ ۗ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ تَدْعُونَ مِن دُونِ اللَّهِ لَن يَخْلُقُوا ذُبَابًا وَلَوْ اجْتَمَعُوا لَهُ ۗ وَإِن يَسْلُبْهُمُ الذُّبَابُ شَيْئًا لَا يَسْتَنْقِذُوهُ مِنْهُ ۗ ضَعُفَ الطَّالِبُ وَالْمَطْلُوبُ ﴾

*"O mankind! A similitude has been coined, so listen to it (carefully): Verily those on whom you call besides Allâh, cannot create (even) a fly, even though they combine together for the purpose. And if the fly snatches away a thing from them, they will have no power to release it from the fly. So weak are (both) the seeker and the sought."*<sup>1</sup>

If you cannot take back what the fly snatches away from you, which then of your affairs do you have control over? Your forelock is in the hand of Allaah, so is your soul. Our heart is between two of His fingers which He turns round as He wills. Your life, death, happiness and misery are all in His Hand.

Your undertakings and sayings are by the permission of Allaah and His Will. You do not move except with His permission and you do not perform any act except by His Will. If He leaves you to yourself, He leaves you to weakness, negligence, sin and misdeed; and if He leaves you for others, He leaves you with the one who cannot avail you of any benefit, harm, death, life or resurrection. You cannot dispense of Allaah for a twinkle of an eye. You rather need Him in every aspect as long as you live. You invite His wrath with sins and disbelief though you seriously need Him in all aspects.

<sup>1</sup> Al-Hajj 22:73.

You forgot Him though, your return is to Him and it is in front of Him that you shall stand.<sup>1</sup>

O man! As a result of your weakness and your inability to shoulder the consequences of your sins, "Allaah wishes to lighten (the burden) for you and man was created weak."<sup>2</sup> He sent Messengers, revealed Books, ordained Laws, established the Straight Path before you and established signs, proofs and evidences and made in everything a sign that shows His Oneness, Lordship and His sole right to be worshipped. But in spite of all this, you block the truth with falsehood, take Satan as a friend besides Allaah and argue with falsehood. Allaah says,

﴿ وَكَانَ الْإِنْسَانُ أَكْثَرَ شَيْءٍ جَدَلًا ﴿١٨﴾ ﴾

*"Man is ever more quarrelsome than anything"*<sup>3</sup>

Allaah's favours in which you move and enjoy have made you forget your beginning and end! Don't you remember that you were created from a mixed sexual discharge, that your return will be to a grave and that final destination after Resurrection will either be Paradise or Fire? Allaah says,

﴿ أَوَلَمْ يَرِ الْإِنْسَانُ أَنَّا خَلَقْنَاهُ مِنْ نُطْفَةٍ فَإِذَا هُوَ خَصِيمٌ مُبِينٌ ﴿١٧﴾ وَضَرَبَ لَنَا مَثَلًا  
وَنَسِيَ خَلْقَهُ ﴿١٨﴾ قَالَ مَنْ يُحْيِي الْعِظْمَ وَهِيَ رَمِيمٌ ﴿١٩﴾ قُلْ يُحْيِيهَا الَّذِي أَنشَأَهَا أَوَّلَ  
مَرَّةٍ ﴿٢٠﴾ وَهُوَ بِكُلِّ خَلْقٍ عَلِيمٌ ﴿٢١﴾ ﴾

<sup>1</sup> From Al-Fawaaid by Ibn Al-Qayyim.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Nisaa 4:28.

<sup>3</sup> Al-Kahf 18:54.

"Does not man see that We have created him from Nutfah (mixed male and female sexual discharge - semen drops). Yet behold he (stands forth) as an open opponent. And he puts forth for Us a parable, and forgets his own creation. He says: "Who will give life to these bones after they are rotted and have become dust?" Say: (O Muhammad (peace be upon him)) "He will give life to them Who created them for the first time! And He is the All-Knower of every creation!"<sup>1</sup>

He also says,

﴿يَتَأْتِيَ الْإِنْسَانَ مَا نَحْنُ بِمَعْرِفَةٍ ۚ إِنَّكَ بِنِعْمَةِ رَبِّكَ أَكْرَمُ ۚ﴾  
 ﴿أَيُّ صُورَةٍ مَّا شَاءَ رَكَّبَكَ ۚ﴾

"O man! What has made you careless about your Lord, the Most Generous? Who created you, fashioned you perfectly, and gave you due proportion. In whatever form He willed, He put you together."<sup>2</sup>

O man! Why are you denying yourself the joy of standing before your Lord, meditating with Him, so that He can enrich you out of poverty, heal you from your ailment, relieve you of your sorrow, forgive your sins, remove your harm, help you when you are wronged, guide you when you are confused or go astray, give you knowledge when you are ignorant, give you security when you are frightened, show mercy to you when you are weak, drive away your enemies and provide for you your livelihood.<sup>3</sup>

O man! The greatest blessing that Allaah endowed man with after that of the religion is the blessing of intelligence, so that he can distinguish with it between what benefits him and what harms him,

<sup>1</sup> Yaa seen 36:77-79.

<sup>2</sup> Miftaah daaris-sa'aadah I, p. 251.

<sup>3</sup> Miftaah daaris-sa'aadah I, p. 251.

to understand the commandments and prohibitions of Allaah and in order to know by it, the greatest goal which is to worship Allaah alone Who has no partner. Allaah says,

﴿ وَمَا بِكُمْ مِنْ نِعْمَةٍ فَمِنَ اللَّهِ ثُمَّ إِذَا مَسَّكُمُ الضُّرُّ فَإِلَيْهِ تَجْرُونَ ﴿٥٤﴾ ثُمَّ إِذَا كُشِفَ الضُّرُّ عَنْكُمْ إِذَا فَرِيقٌ مِنْكُمْ بِرَبِّهِمْ يُشْرِكُونَ ﴿٥٥﴾ ﴾

*"And whatever of blessings and good things you have, it is from Allâh. Then, when harm touches you, unto Him you cry aloud for help. Then, when He has removed the harm from you, behold! Some of you associate others in worship with their Lord (Allâh)."*<sup>1</sup>

O you man! The wise person loves lofty matters and abhors debased ones. He loves to emulate every righteous and magnanimous among the Prophets and pious people and yearns to join them even if he cannot reach their status. The only way to that is what Allaah directs us to when He says,

﴿ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّونَ اللَّهَ فَاتَّبِعُونِي يُحْبِبْكُمُ اللَّهُ ﴾

*"If you (really) love Allâh then follow me (i.e. accept Islâmic Monotheism, follow the Qur'ân and the Sunnah), Allâh will love you and forgive you your sins."*<sup>2</sup>

If man can do this, Allaah will make him join the rank of the Prophets, the Messengers, the Martyrs and righteous people. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> An-Nahl 16:53-54.

<sup>2</sup> Aal 'Imraan 3:31.



﴿ وَمَنْ يُطِيعِ اللَّهَ وَالرَّسُولَ فَأُولَئِكَ مَعَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنَ النَّبِيِّينَ وَالصِّدِّيقِينَ وَالشُّهَدَاءِ وَالصَّالِحِينَ وَحَسُنَ أُولَئِكَ رَفِيقًا ﴾ ﴿١١﴾

"And whoso obey Allâh and the Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) then they will be in the company of those on whom Allâh has bestowed His Grace, of the Prophets, the Siddiqûn (those followers of the Prophets who were first and foremost to believe in them, like Abu Bakr As-Siddiq (may Allah be pleased with him), the martyrs, and the righteous. And how excellent these companions are!"<sup>1</sup>

O you man! I advise you that you go into seclusion with yourself and think deeply of the truth that has come to you reflect over the proofs and evidences; if you find it to be truth hasten to follow it and do not be a slave of customs and traditions. Know that your own soul is dearer to you than your friends, companions and heritage of your fore-fathers. Allaah has admonished the disbelievers with this and called them to it. He says,

﴿ إِنَّمَا أَعْظَمُكُمْ بَوَاحِدَةٍ أَنْ تَقُومُوا لِلَّهِ مِثْلَىٰ قَفْأَيْنِ وَقُرَادَىٰ ثُمَّ تَتَفَكَّرُونَ مَا بِصَاحِبِكُمْ مِنْ جِنَّةٍ إِنْ هُوَ إِلَّا نَذِيرٌ لَّكُمْ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ عَذَابٍ شَدِيدٍ ﴾ ﴿١١﴾

"I exhort you to one (thing) only: that you stand up for Allâh's sake in pairs and singly, and reflect (within yourselves the life history of the Prophet (peace be upon him)) there is no madness in your companion (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) he is only a warner to you in face of a severe torment."<sup>2</sup>

O man! When you accept Islaam, you stand to lose nothing. Allaah says,

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:46.

<sup>2</sup> Saba 34:46.

﴿ وَمَاذَا عَلَيْهِمْ لَوْ ءَامَنُوا بِٱللَّهِ وَٱلْيَوْمِ ٱلْءَاخِرِ وَأَنفَقُوا مِمَّا رَزَقَهُمُ ٱللَّهُ وَكَانَ ٱللَّهُ بِهِم  
عَلِيمًا ﴾

*"And what loss have they if they had believed in Allâh and in the Last Day, and they spend out of what Allâh has given them for sustenance? And Allâh is Ever All-Knower of them."*<sup>1</sup>

Ibn Katheer said, "What would have harmed them had they believed in Allaah, followed the praiseworthy way, believed in Allaah hoping for His promise in the Hereafter for him who did good deeds and spent out of what He has given them in ways which He loves and is pleased with? He knows their good and evil intentions; he knows who deserved success among them so that He might give him success and show him guidance and appoint him for good deeds with which he is pleased. He also knows who deserves disgrace and expulsion from His Divine Affection which whoever is expelled from the door of Allaah has failed and lost in this world and the Hereafter."<sup>2</sup>

Your Islaam does not stand between you and anything that you want to do or to have among the things that Allaah has made lawful for you. Rather, you will be rewarded for any good deed you do in which you seek the pleasure of Allaah even if that is in the interest of your worldly life or increases your wealth or portion or fame. As for the lawful things that you use, when you restrict yourself to them and you abstain from unlawful things, you will be rewarded for that. The Messenger of Allaah, blessings and peace be upon him, said, "There is an act of charity in satiating your sexual desire." The companions said, "O Messenger of Allaah! Will anyone of us satiate his desire and still get reward for that?" He answered, "Tell me, if he satiates it in an unlawful way, will he be

<sup>1</sup> An-Nisaa 4:39.

<sup>2</sup> See Ibn Katheer 1. 497.

committing a sin by that? Likewise, if he satiates it in the lawful way, he will have reward for that."<sup>1</sup>

O man! The Messengers have brought the truth and conveyed the will of Allaah, and man needs to know the Law of Allaah so as to live his life with sure knowledge and to be among the successful in the Hereafter. Allaah says,

﴿ يَتَأْتِيهَا النَّاسُ قَدْ جَاءَكُمُ الرَّسُولُ بِالْحَقِّ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ فَآمِنُوا خَيْرًا لَكُمْ ۚ وَإِنْ تُكَفِّرُوا ۚ فَإِنَّ لِلَّهِ مَا فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ ۗ وَكَانَ اللَّهُ عَلِيمًا حَكِيمًا ﴿٢٠٦﴾ ﴾

"O mankind! Verily, there has come to you the Messenger (Muhammad (peace be upon him)) with the truth from your Lord. So believe in him, it is better for you. But if you disbelieve, then certainly to Allâh belongs all that is in the heavens and the earth. And Allâh is Ever All-Knowing, All-Wise."<sup>2</sup>

He also says,

﴿ قُلْ يَتَأْتِيهَا النَّاسُ قَدْ جَاءَكُمُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ ۗ فَمَنْ اهْتَدَىٰ فَإِنَّمَا يَهْتَدِي لِنَفْسِهِ ۗ وَمَنْ ضَلَّٰ فَإِنَّمَا يَضِلُّ عَلَيْهَا ۗ وَمَا أَنَا عَلَيْكُمْ بِوَكِيلٍ ﴿٢٠٧﴾ ﴾

Say: "O you mankind! Now truth (i.e. the Qur'ân and Prophet Muhammad (peace be upon him)) has come to you from your Lord. So whosoever receives guidance, he does so for the good of his own self, and whosoever goes astray, he does so to his own loss,

<sup>1</sup> Muslim.

<sup>2</sup> An-Nisaa 4:70.

*and I am not (set) over you as a Wakîl (disposer of affairs to oblige you for guidance)."*<sup>1</sup>

O man! If you embrace Islaam, you benefit none but yourself, and if you disbelieve you harm none but your own self. Allaah is in no need of His slaves. Sin of the sinners does not harm Him nor do acts of obedience of the obedient ones benefit Him. He is not disobeyed unless by His knowledge and He is not obeyed except with His permission. Allaah says in what was reported from Him by His Prophet, "O My Slaves! I have made injustice forbidden for myself and I have also made it forbidden amongst you, so do not wrong one another. O My slaves! You are all in error except him whom I guide so seek guidance from Me, I will guide you. O My slaves! All of you are hungry except whom I feed so seek food from Me, I will feed you. O My slaves! All of you are naked except him who I clothe; so seek clothing from Me, I will clothe you! O My slaves! You commit sins by day and night, but I forgive all sins. So seek forgiveness from Me, I will forgive you. O My slaves! You can never be able to harm Me; and you can never be able to benefit yourselves, let alone benefiting Me. O My slaves! If the first and the last of you, and all the jinn and mankind among you were to be as pious as the most pious one among you, that adds nothing to My Kingdom. O My slaves! If the first and the last among you, and all the jinn and mankind of you are to be as sinful as the most sinful one amongst you, that decreases nothing from My Kingdom. O My slaves! If the first of you and the last among you were to stand at one place and ask Me and I grant to each and everyone his request, that decreases nothing from My Kingdom except like what a thread reduces from the ocean when it is dipped inside it and then withdrawn. O My slaves! These are only your deeds that I enumerate accurately for you, and upon which I give you reward. So whoever finds good reward, let him thank Allaah, but whoever finds anything else, let him not blame but himself."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Yoonus 10:108.

<sup>2</sup> Reported by Muslim

All praise is due to Allaah, Lord of the worlds. Peace and blessings be upon the noblest of all Prophets and Messengers, our Prophet Muhammad. Peace also be upon his household and companions.

**Table of contents**

Translator's note.....2

Author's preface..... 4

Where is the way?.....9

Existence of Allaah, His Lordship (over all creation), His Oneness and His being the only God worthy of worship.....10

Creation of the universe..... 29

The underling reason..... 33

Creating and honouring man.....40

The position of woman ..... 46

Why was man created?.....53

Man's need for religion..... 57

Criteria for identifying the true religion ..... 62

Types of religions ..... 72

Conditions of the existing religions.....75

The essence of Prophethood.....83

Signs of Prophethood.....91

Mankind's need for the Messengers.....95

---

The Final Return.....	100
Fundamentals of the Messengers' Mission.....	108
The Everlasting Message.....	113
The Seal of Prophethood.....	123
Meaning of the word: Islaam.....	126
Reality of disbelief .....	130
Sources of Islaam.....	135
Degrees of Religion.....	149
-The First Degree.....	149
-The Second Degree.....	156
-The Third Degree.....	178
Some of the beauties of Islaam.....	181
-It is the only religion chosen by Allaah .....	182
-Comprehensiveness.....	183
-It links man to his Creator.....	183
-It caters for the benefits of this world and the Hereafter .....	184
-Easiness.....	185
-Justice.....	187

***Islaam: Its Foundations And Concepts*** **221**

---

-Enjoining all good and forbidding all evil.....	187
Repentance.....	189
Repercussions of rejecting Islaam.....	194
-Fear and lack of security.....	194
-Difficult life.....	195
-Life in perpetual war with self and the world around.....	196
-A life of ignorance.....	198
-A life of one who wrongs himself.....	198
Exposing oneself to Allaah's wrath.....	199
-Failure and loss.....	201
-A life of disbelief in Allaah.....	202
-Being deprived of a real and a purposeful life.....	202
-Living in an infinite torment.....	204
Conclusion.....	208



# الإسلام

## أصوله ومبادئه

تأليف

د. محمد بن عبد الله السحيم

ترجمه إلى الإنجليزية

عبد الرافع الإمام



١/١٠

# الإسلام

## أصوله ومبادئه

باللغة الإنجليزية

المؤلف

محمد بن عبد الله السحيم

المكتب التعاوني للدعوة والإرشاد وتوعية الجاليات بالبيعة  
ص ب ٢٤٩٣٢ - الرياض ١١٤٥٦ هـ هاتف ٤٣٣٠٨٨٨ فاكس ٤٣٠١١٢٢